

**NEC**

**User's Manual**

# **78K/0 Series**

**Instructions**

---

**For all 78K/0 Series**

Document No. U12326EJ3V2UMJ1 (3rd edition)  
Date Published November 2000 N CP(K)

© NEC Corporation 1995  
Printed in Japan

[MEMO]

## NOTES FOR CMOS DEVICES

### ① PRECAUTION AGAINST ESD FOR SEMICONDUCTORS

Note:

Strong electric field, when exposed to a MOS device, can cause destruction of the gate oxide and ultimately degrade the device operation. Steps must be taken to stop generation of static electricity as much as possible, and quickly dissipate it once, when it has occurred. Environmental control must be adequate. When it is dry, humidifier should be used. It is recommended to avoid using insulators that easily build static electricity. Semiconductor devices must be stored and transported in an anti-static container, static shielding bag or conductive material. All test and measurement tools including work bench and floor should be grounded. The operator should be grounded using wrist strap. Semiconductor devices must not be touched with bare hands. Similar precautions need to be taken for PW boards with semiconductor devices on it.

### ② HANDLING OF UNUSED INPUT PINS FOR CMOS

Note:

No connection for CMOS device inputs can be cause of malfunction. If no connection is provided to the input pins, it is possible that an internal input level may be generated due to noise, etc., hence causing malfunction. CMOS devices behave differently than Bipolar or NMOS devices. Input levels of CMOS devices must be fixed high or low by using a pull-up or pull-down circuitry. Each unused pin should be connected to  $V_{DD}$  or GND with a resistor, if it is considered to have a possibility of being an output pin. All handling related to the unused pins must be judged device by device and related specifications governing the devices.

### ③ STATUS BEFORE INITIALIZATION OF MOS DEVICES

Note:

Power-on does not necessarily define initial status of MOS device. Production process of MOS does not define the initial operation status of the device. Immediately after the power source is turned ON, the devices with reset function have not yet been initialized. Hence, power-on does not guarantee out-pin levels, I/O settings or contents of registers. Device is not initialized until the reset signal is received. Reset operation must be executed immediately after power-on for devices having reset function.

FIP and IEBus are trademarks of NEC Corporation.

**Caution: The following products are provided with an I<sup>2</sup>C bus interface circuit:**

*μPD78002Y Subseries, μPD78014Y Subseries, μPD78018FY Subseries  
μPD78054Y Subseries, μPD78058FY Subseries, μPD78064Y Subseries  
μPD78075BY Subseries, μPD78078Y Subseries, μPD780018Y Subseries  
μPD780024Y Subseries, μPD780034Y Subseries, μPD780058Y Subseries  
μPD780308Y Subseries, μPD78070AY*

Purchase of NEC I<sup>2</sup>C components conveys a license under the Philips I<sup>2</sup>C Patent Rights to use these components in an I<sup>2</sup>C system, provided that the system conforms to the I<sup>2</sup>C Standard Specification as defined by Philips.

The export of these products from Japan is regulated by the Japanese government. The export of some or all of these products may be prohibited without governmental license. To export or re-export some or all of these products from a country other than Japan may also be prohibited without a license from that country. Please call an NEC sales representative.

• **The information in this document is current as of June, 1997. The information is subject to change without notice. For actual design-in, refer to the latest publications of NEC's data sheets or data books, etc., for the most up-to-date specifications of NEC semiconductor products. Not all products and/or types are available in every country. Please check with an NEC sales representative for availability and additional information.**

• No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means without prior written consent of NEC. NEC assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document.

• NEC does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of NEC semiconductor products listed in this document or any other liability arising from the use of such products. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of NEC or others.

• Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided for illustrative purposes in semiconductor product operation and application examples. The incorporation of these circuits, software and information in the design of customer's equipment shall be done under the full responsibility of customer. NEC assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by customers or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software and information.

• While NEC endeavours to enhance the quality, reliability and safety of NEC semiconductor products, customers agree and acknowledge that the possibility of defects thereof cannot be eliminated entirely. To minimize risks of damage to property or injury (including death) to persons arising from defects in NEC semiconductor products, customers must incorporate sufficient safety measures in their design, such as redundancy, fire-containment, and anti-failure features.

• NEC semiconductor products are classified into the following three quality grades:

"Standard", "Special" and "Specific". The "Specific" quality grade applies only to semiconductor products developed based on a customer-designated "quality assurance program" for a specific application. The recommended applications of a semiconductor product depend on its quality grade, as indicated below. Customers must check the quality grade of each semiconductor product before using it in a particular application.

"Standard": Computers, office equipment, communications equipment, test and measurement equipment, audio and visual equipment, home electronic appliances, machine tools, personal electronic equipment and industrial robots

"Special": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.), traffic control systems, anti-disaster systems, anti-crime systems, safety equipment and medical equipment (not specifically designed for life support)

"Specific": Aircraft, aerospace equipment, submersible repeaters, nuclear reactor control systems, life support systems and medical equipment for life support, etc.

The quality grade of NEC semiconductor products is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in NEC's data sheets or data books, etc. If customers wish to use NEC semiconductor products in applications not intended by NEC, they must contact an NEC sales representative in advance to determine NEC's willingness to support a given application.

(Note)

(1) "NEC" as used in this statement means NEC Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(2) "NEC semiconductor products" means any semiconductor product developed or manufactured by or for NEC (as defined above).

# Regional Information

Some information contained in this document may vary from country to country. Before using any NEC product in your application, please contact the NEC office in your country to obtain a list of authorized representatives and distributors. They will verify:

- Device availability
- Ordering information
- Product release schedule
- Availability of related technical literature
- Development environment specifications (for example, specifications for third-party tools and components, host computers, power plugs, AC supply voltages, and so forth)
- Network requirements

In addition, trademarks, registered trademarks, export restrictions, and other legal issues may also vary from country to country.

## **NEC Electronics Inc. (U.S.)**

Santa Clara, California  
Tel: 408-588-6000  
800-366-9782  
Fax: 408-588-6130  
800-729-9288

## **NEC Electronics (Germany) GmbH**

Duesseldorf, Germany  
Tel: 0211-65 03 02  
Fax: 0211-65 03 490

## **NEC Electronics (UK) Ltd.**

Milton Keynes, UK  
Tel: 01908-691-133  
Fax: 01908-670-290

## **NEC Electronics Italiana s.r.l.**

Milano, Italy  
Tel: 02-66 75 41  
Fax: 02-66 75 42 99

## **NEC Electronics (Germany) GmbH**

Benelux Office  
Eindhoven, The Netherlands  
Tel: 040-2445845  
Fax: 040-2444580

## **NEC Electronics (France) S.A.**

Velizy-Villacoublay, France  
Tel: 01-30-67 58 00  
Fax: 01-30-67 58 99

## **NEC Electronics (France) S.A.**

Madrid Office  
Madrid, Spain  
Tel: 91-504-2787  
Fax: 91-504-2860

## **NEC Electronics (Germany) GmbH**

Scandinavia Office  
Taeby, Sweden  
Tel: 08-63 80 820  
Fax: 08-63 80 388

## **NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.**

Hong Kong  
Tel: 2886-9318  
Fax: 2886-9022/9044

## **NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.**

Seoul Branch  
Seoul, Korea  
Tel: 02-528-0303  
Fax: 02-528-4411

## **NEC Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.**

United Square, Singapore  
Tel: 65-253-8311  
Fax: 65-250-3583

## **NEC Electronics Taiwan Ltd.**

Taipei, Taiwan  
Tel: 02-2719-2377  
Fax: 02-2719-5951

## **NEC do Brasil S.A.**

Electron Devices Division  
Guarulhos-SP Brasil  
Tel: 55-11-6462-6810  
Fax: 55-11-6462-6829

### Major Revisions in This Edition

Page	Contents
Throughout	<p>Added products, deleted products</p> <p>Added products : <math>\mu</math>PD78014H, 78018FY, 78044F, 78044H, 78058F, 78058FY, 78064Y, 78064B, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078Y, 78098B, 780018Y, 780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y, 780058, 780058Y, 780228, 780308, 780308Y, 780924, 780964 Subseries and <math>\mu</math>PD78011F, 78012F, 78070A, 78070AY, 780001, 78P0914, 780206, 780208</p> <p>Deleted products: <math>\mu</math>PD78024, 78044, 78044A Subseries</p>
p.11	Add <b>Table 1-13 Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products</b>
p.17	Change <b>Table 1-14 External Memory Space of 78K/0 Series Products</b>

The mark ★ shows major revised points.

## INTRODUCTION

### Intended Readership

This manual has been prepared for user engineers who want to understand the functions of the 78K/0 Series products and design and develop its application systems and programs.

### 78K/0 Series products

- $\mu$ PD78002 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78001B, 78002B
- $\mu$ PD78002Y Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78001BY, 78002BY
- $\mu$ PD78014 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78011B, 78012B, 78013, 78014, 78P014
- $\mu$ PD78014Y Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78011BY, 78012BY, 78013Y, 78014Y, 78P014Y
- $\mu$ PD78014H Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78011H, 78012H, 78013H, 78014H
- $\mu$ PD78018F Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78011F, 78012F, 78013F, 78014F, 78015F, 78016F, 78018F, 78P018F
- $\mu$ PD78018FY Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78011FY, 78012FY, 78013FY, 78014FY, 78015FY, 78016FY, 78018FY, 78P018FY
- $\mu$ PD78044F Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78042F, 78043F, 78044F, 78045F, 78P048A
- $\mu$ PD78044H Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78044H, 78045H, 78046H, 78P048B
- $\mu$ PD78054 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78052, 78053, 78054, 78P054, 78055, 78056, 78058, 78P058
- $\mu$ PD78054Y Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78052Y, 78053Y, 78054Y, 78P054Y, 78055Y, 78056Y, 78058Y, 78P058Y
- $\mu$ PD78058F Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78056F, 78058F, 78P058F
- $\mu$ PD78058FY Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78056FY, 78058FY, 78P058FY
- $\mu$ PD78064 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78062, 78063, 78064, 78P064
- $\mu$ PD78064Y Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78062Y, 78063Y, 78064Y, 78P064Y
- $\mu$ PD78064B Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78064B, 78P064B
- $\mu$ PD78070A :  $\mu$ PD78070A
- $\mu$ PD78070AY :  $\mu$ PD78070AY
- $\mu$ PD78075B Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78074B, 78075B
- $\mu$ PD78075BY Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78074BY, 78075BY
- $\mu$ PD78078 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78076, 78078, 78P078
- $\mu$ PD78078Y Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78076Y, 78078Y, 78P078Y
- $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78081, 78082, 78P083
- $\mu$ PD78098 Subseries :  $\mu$ PD78094, 78095, 78096, 78098A, 78P098A
- $\mu$ PD78098B Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD78095B, 78096B, 78098B, 78P098B
- $\mu$ PD780001 :  $\mu$ PD78001
- $\mu$ PD780018Y Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780016Y, 780018Y, 78P0018Y
- $\mu$ PD780024 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780021, 780022, 780023, 780024
- $\mu$ PD780024Y Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780021Y, 780022Y, 780023Y, 780024Y
- $\mu$ PD780034 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780031, 780032, 780033, 780034, 78F0034
- $\mu$ PD780034Y Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780031Y, 780032Y, 780033Y, 780034Y, 78F0034Y
- $\mu$ PD780058 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780053, 780054, 780055, 780056, 780058, 78F0058

- $\mu$ PD780058Y Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780053Y, 780054Y, 780055Y, 780056Y, 780058Y, 78F0058Y
- $\mu$ PD780208 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780204, 780205, 780206, 780208, 78P0208
- $\mu$ PD780228 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780226, 780228, 78F0228
- $\mu$ PD780308 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780306, 780308, 78P0308
- $\mu$ PD780308Y Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780306Y, 780308Y, 78P0308Y
- $\mu$ PD78P0914<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD78P0914
- $\mu$ PD780924 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780921, 780922, 780923, 780924, 78F0924
- $\mu$ PD780964 Subseries<sup>Note</sup> :  $\mu$ PD780961, 780962, 780963, 780964, 78F0964

**Note** Under development

**Purpose** This manual is intended for the users to understand the various kinds of instruction functions of 78K/0 Series products.

**Organization** This manual consists of the following contents.

- CPU functions
- Instruction set
- Explanation of instructions

**How to Read This Manual** Before reading this manual, you must have general knowledge of electric and logic circuits and microcontroller.

- To check the details of the functions of an instruction whose mnemonic is known:  
→ Refer to **APPENDICES B** and **C INSTRUCTION INDEX**.
- To check an instruction whose mnemonic is not known and whose general function is known:  
→ Check the mnemonic in **CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET** and then the functions in **CHAPTER 5 EXPLANATION OF INSTRUCTIONS**.
- To learn about various kinds of 78K/0 Series products instructions in general:  
→ Read this manual in the order of contents.
- To learn about the hardware functions of 78K/0 Series products:  
→ See the separate User's Manual (refer to **Related Documents**).

**Legend**

Data representation weight	: High digits on the left and low digits on the right
Note	: Description of Note in the text
Caution	: Information requiring particular attention
Remark	: Additional explanatory material
Numeral representations	: Binary .....XXXX or XXXXB
	Decimal .....XXXX
	Hexadecimal ...XXXXH



★ **Related Documents**

The related documents indicated in this publication may include preliminary versions. However, preliminary versions are not marked as such.

• **Documents Common for 78K/0 Series**

Document Name		Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
User's Manual Instructions		U12326J	This manual
Application Note <sup>Note</sup>	Basic I	IEA-715	IEA-1288
	Basic II	U10121J	U10121E
	Basic III	IEA-767	U10182E
	Floating-point Operation Program	IEA-718	IEA-1289
Selection Guide		U11126J	U11126E
Instruction Table		C10903J	—
Instruction Set		C10904J	—

**Note** Some Subseries may not be covered.

• **Individual Documents**

**μPD78002, 78002Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78001B, 78002B Data Sheet	U10674J	U10674E
μPD78001BY, 78002BY Data Sheet	IC-8571	IC-3173
User's Manual	U10039J	U10039E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5556	—

**μPD78014 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78011B, 78012B, 78013, 78014 Data Sheet	IC-8201	IC-3179
μPD78P014 Data Sheet	IC-8111	IC-3098
User's Manual	U10085J	U10085E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5527	—

**μPD78014Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78011BY, 78012BY, 78013Y, 78014Y Data Sheet	IC-8573	IC-3405
μPD78P014Y Data Sheet	IC-8572	IC-3180
User's Manual	U10085J	U10085E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5527	—

**μPD78014H Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78011H, 78012H, 78013H, 78014H Data Sheet	U11898J	U11898E
User's Manual	U12220J	U12220E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78018F Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78011F, 78012F, 78013F, 78014F, 78015F, 78016F Data Sheet	U10280J	U10280E
μPD78P018F Data Sheet	U10955J	U10955E
User's Manual	U10659J	U10659E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5594	—

**μPD78018FY Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78011FY, 78012FY, 78013FY, 78014FY, 78015FY, 78016FY Data Sheet	U10280J	U10280E
μPD78P018FY Data Sheet	U10989J	U10989E
User's Manual	U10659J	U10659E
Special Function Register Table	U10287J	—

**μPD78044F Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78042F, 78043F, 78044F, 78045F Data Sheet	U10700J	U10700E
μPD78P048A Data Sheet	U10611J	U10611E
User's Manual	U10908J	U10908E
Special Function Register Table	U10701J	—

**μPD78044H Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78044H, 78045H, 78046H Data Sheet	U10865J	U10865E
μPD78P048B Data Sheet	To be prepared	To be prepared
User's Manual	U11756J	U11756E

**μPD78054 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78052, 78053, 78054, 78055, 78056, 78058 Data Sheet	IC-8631	IC-3403
μPD78P054 Data Sheet	IC-8635	IC-3216
μPD78P058 Data Sheet	IC-8884	U10417E
User's Manual	U11747J	U11747E
Special Function Register Table	U10102J	—

**μPD78054Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78052Y, 78053Y, 78054Y, 78055Y, 78056Y, 78058Y Data Sheet	U10906J	U10906E
μPD78P054Y Preliminary Product Information	IP-8719	IP-3205
μPD78P058Y Data Sheet	U10907J	U10907E
User's Manual	U11747J	U11747E
Special Function Register Table	U10087J	—

**μPD78058F Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78056F, 78058F Data Sheet	U11795J	U11795E
μPD78P058F Data Sheet	U11796J	U11796E
User's Manual	U12068J	U12068E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78058FY Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78056FY, 78058FY Data Sheet	U12325J	U12325E
μPD78P058FY Data Sheet	U12076J	U12076E
User's Manual	U12068J	U12068E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78064 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78062, 78063, 78064 Data Sheet	IC-8632	IC-3244
μPD78P064 Data Sheet	IC-8636	IC-3224
User's Manual	U10105J	U10105E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5568	—

**μPD78064Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78062Y, 78063Y, 78064Y Data Sheet	IC-8704	U10337E
μPD78P064Y Data Sheet	U10321J	IP-3236
User's Manual	U10105J	U10105E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5583	—

**μPD78064B Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78064B Data Sheet	U11590J	U11590E
μPD78P064B Data Sheet	U11598J	U11598E
User's Manual	U10785J	U10785E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78070A**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78070A Data Sheet	U10326J	U10326E
User's Manual	IEU-907	U10200E
Special Function Register Table	U10133J	—

**μPD78070AY**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78070AY Data Sheet	U10542J	U10542E
User's Manual	IEU-907	U10200E
Special Function Register Table	U10134J	—

**μPD78075B Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78074B, 78075B Data Sheet	U12017J	U12017E
User's Manual	To be prepared	To be prepared
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78075BY Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78074BY, 78075BY Data Sheet	To be prepared	To be prepared
User's Manual	To be prepared	To be prepared
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78078 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78076, 78078 Data Sheet	U10167J	U10167E
μPD78P078 Data Sheet	U10168J	U10168E
User's Manual	U10641J	U10641E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5607	—

**μPD78078Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78076Y, 78078Y Data Sheet	U10605J	U10605E
μPD78P078Y Data Sheet	U10606J	U10606E
User's Manual	U10641J	U10641E
Special Function Register Table	U10257J	—

**μPD78083 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78081, 78082 Data Sheet	U11415J	U11415E
μPD78P083 Data Sheet	U11006J	U11006E
User's Manual	U12176J	U12176E
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5599	—

**μPD78098 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78094, 78095, 78096, 78098A Data Sheet	U10146J	U10146E
μPD78P098A Data Sheet	U10203J	U10203E
User's Manual	IEU-854	IEU-1381
Special Function Register Table	IEM-5591	—

**μPD780208 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780204, 780205, 780206, 780208 Data Sheet	U10436J	IP-3540
μPD78P0208 Data Sheet	U11295J	IP-3475
User's Manual	U11302J	U11302E
Special Function Register Table	U10997J	—

**μPD780001**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780001 Data Sheet	U10324J	U10324E
User's Manual	U10885J	U10885E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780018Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780016Y, 780018Y Preliminary Product Information	U11810J	U11810E
μPD78P0018Y Preliminary Product Information	U11606J	U11606E
User's Manual	U11754J	U11754E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780024 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780021, 780022, 780023, 780024 Preliminary Product Information	U12299J	U12299E
User's Manual	U12022J	U12022E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780024Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780021Y, 780022Y, 780023Y, 780024Y Preliminary Product Information	U12165J	U12165E
User's Manual	U12022J	U12022E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780034 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780031, 780032, 780033, 780034 Preliminary Product Information	U12300J	U12300E
μPD78F0034 Preliminary Product Information	U11993J	U11993E
User's Manual	U12022J	U12022E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780034Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780031Y, 780032Y, 780033Y, 780034Y Preliminary Product Information	U12166J	U12166E
μPD78F0034Y Preliminary Product Information	U11994J	U11994E
User's Manual	U12022J	U12022E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780058 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780053, 780054, 780055, 780056, 780058 Preliminary Product Information	U12182J	U12182E
μPD78F0058 Preliminary Product Information	U12092J	U12092E
User's Manual	U12013J	U12013E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780058Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780053Y, 780054Y, 780055Y, 780056Y, 780058Y Preliminary Product Information	To be prepared	To be prepared
μPD78F0058Y Preliminary Product Information	U12324J	U12324E
User's Manual	U12013J	U12013E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780228 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780226, 780228 Preliminary Product Information	U11797J	U11797E
μPD78F0228 Preliminary Product Information	U11971J	U11971E
User's Manual	U12012J	U12012E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780308 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780306, 780308 Preliminary Product Information	U12183J	U12183E
μPD78P0308 Preliminary Product Information	U11776J	U11776E
User's Manual	U11377J	U11377E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD780308Y Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780306Y, 780308Y Preliminary Product Information	To be prepared	To be prepared
μPD78P0308Y Preliminary Product Information	U11832J	U11832E
User's Manual	U11377J	U11377E
Special Function Register Table	To be prepared	—

**μPD78P0914**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD78P0914 Preliminary Product Information	U10058J	U10058E
User's Manual	To be prepared	To be prepared
Special Function Register Table	U10866J	—

**μPD780924 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780921, 780922, 780923, 780924 Preliminary Product Information	U11804J	U11804E
μPD78F0924 Preliminary Product Information	U11930J	U11930E
User's Manual	U12071J	U12071E
Special Function Register Table	U12230J	—

**μPD780964 Subseries**

Document Name	Japanese Document Number	English Document Number
μPD780961, 780962, 780963, 780964 Preliminary Product Information	U11879J	U11879E
μPD78F0964 Preliminary Product Information	U11956J	U11956E
User's Manual	U12071J	U12071E
Special Function Register Table	U12230J	—

**Caution** The above related documents are subject to change without notice. Be sure to use the latest version when designing your system.



## CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 MEMORY SPACE</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>1.1 Memory Spaces</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>1.2 Internal Program Memory (Internal ROM) Space</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>1.3 Vector Table Area</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>1.4 CALLT Instruction Table Area</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>1.5 CALLF Instruction Entry Area</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>1.6 Internal Data Memory (Internal RAM) Space</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>1.7 Special Function Register (SFR) Area</b> .....	<b>16</b>
<b>1.8 External Memory Space</b> .....	<b>16</b>
<b>1.9 IEBus™ Register Area (μPD78098 and 78098B Subseries Only)</b> .....	<b>19</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 REGISTER</b> .....	<b>21</b>
<b>2.1 Control Registers</b> .....	<b>21</b>
2.1.1 Program counter (PC) .....	21
2.1.2 Program status word (PSW) .....	21
2.1.3 Stack pointer (SP) .....	23
<b>2.2 General Registers</b> .....	<b>24</b>
<b>2.3 Special-Function Register (SFR)</b> .....	<b>26</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 ADDRESSING</b> .....	<b>27</b>
<b>3.1 Instruction Address Addressing</b> .....	<b>27</b>
3.1.1 Relative addressing .....	27
3.1.2 Immediate addressing .....	28
3.1.3 Table indirect addressing .....	29
3.1.4 Register addressing .....	30
<b>3.2 Operand Address Addressing</b> .....	<b>31</b>
3.2.1 Implied addressing .....	31
3.2.2 Register addressing .....	32
3.2.3 Direct addressing .....	33
3.2.4 Short direct addressing .....	34
3.2.5 Special-function register (SFR) addressing .....	35
3.2.6 Register indirect addressing .....	36
3.2.7 Based addressing .....	37
3.2.8 Based indexed addressing .....	38
3.2.9 Stack addressing .....	39
<b>CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET</b> .....	<b>41</b>
<b>4.1 Operation</b> .....	<b>42</b>
4.1.1 Operand identifiers and description methods .....	42
4.1.2 Description of “operation” column .....	43
4.1.3 Description of “flag operation” column .....	43
4.1.4 Description of “clock” column .....	44
4.1.5 Operation list .....	45
4.1.6 Instructions listed by addressing type .....	78

4.2 Instruction Codes .....	82
4.2.1 Description of instruction code table .....	82
4.2.2 Instruction code list .....	83
<b>CHAPTER 5 EXPLANATION OF INSTRUCTIONS .....</b>	<b>91</b>
5.1 8-Bit Data Transfer Instructions .....	93
5.2 16-Bit Data Transfer Instructions .....	96
5.3 8-Bit Operation Instructions .....	99
5.4 16-Bit Operation Instructions .....	108
5.5 Multiply/Divide Instructions .....	112
5.6 Increment/Decrement Instructions .....	115
5.7 Rotate Instructions .....	120
5.8 BCD Adjust Instructions .....	127
5.9 Bit Manipulation Instructions .....	130
5.10 Call Return Instructions .....	138
5.11 Stack Manipulation Instructions .....	146
5.12 Unconditional Branch Instruction .....	150
5.13 Conditional Branch Instructions .....	152
5.14 CPU Control Instructions .....	161
<b>APPENDIX A REVISION HISTORY .....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>APPENDIX B INSTRUCTION INDEX (MNEMONIC: BY FUNCTION) .....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>APPENDIX C INSTRUCTION INDEX (MNEMONIC: IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER) .....</b>	<b>173</b>

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure No.	Title	Page
2-1	Program Counter Configuration .....	21
2-2	Program Status Word Configuration .....	21
2-3	Stack Pointer Configuration .....	23
2-4	Data to be Saved to Stack Memory .....	23
2-5	Data to be Reset from Stack Memory .....	23
2-6	General Register Configuration .....	25

## LIST OF TABLES

Table No.	Title	Page
1-1	Internal ROM Space of 78K/0 Series Products .....	2
1-2	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78002, 78002Y, 78014, 78014Y, 78014H, 78018F, 78018FY Subseries and $\mu$ PD780001) .....	5
1-3	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78044F, 78044H, 780208 Subseries) .....	5
1-4	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78054, 78054Y, 78058F, 78058FY, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078, 78078Y Subseries and $\mu$ PD78070A, 78070AY) .....	6
1-5	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78064, 78064Y, 78064B, 780308, 780308Y, 780058, 780058Y Subseries) .....	6
1-6	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries) .....	7
1-7	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78098, 78098B Subseries) .....	7
1-8	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780018Y Subseries) .....	8
1-9	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y Subseries) .....	8
1-10	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780228 Subseries) .....	8
1-11	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78P0914) .....	9
1-12	Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780924, 780964 Subseries) .....	9
1-13	Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products .....	11
1-14	External Memory Space of 78K/0 Series Products .....	17
2-1	General Register Absolute Address Correspondence Table .....	24
4-1	Operand Identifiers and Description Methods .....	42

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 1 MEMORY SPACE

### 1.1 Memory Spaces

The 78K/0 Series product program memory map varies depending on the internal memory capacity. For details of memory mapped address area, refer to **each product User's Manual**.

### 1.2 Internal Program Memory (Internal ROM) Space

Each 78K/0 Series product has internal ROM in the address space shown below. Program and table data, etc. are stored in ROM. Normally, this memory space is addressed by the program counter (PC).

★ **Table 1-1. Internal ROM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (1/3)**

Capacity Address space Subseries name	8 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	24 Kbytes	32 Kbytes	40 Kbytes	48 Kbytes	60 Kbytes
	0000H-1FFFH	0000H-3FFFH	0000H-5FFFH	0000H-7FFFH	0000H-9FFFH	0000H-BFFFH	0000H-EFFFH
μPD78002 Subseries	μPD78001B	μPD78002B					
μPD78002Y Subseries	μPD78001BY	μPD78002BY					
μPD78014 Subseries	μPD78011B	μPD78012B	μPD78013	μPD78014, μPD78P014			
μPD78014Y Subseries	μPD78011BY	μPD78012BY	μPD78013Y	μPD78014Y, μPD78P014Y			
μPD78014H Subseries	μPD78011H	μPD78012H	μPD78013H	μPD78014H			
μPD78018F Subseries	μPD78011F	μPD78012F	μPD78013F	μPD78014F	μPD78015F	μPD78016F	μPD78018F, μPD78P018F
μPD78018FY Subseries	μPD78011FY	μPD78012FY	μPD78013FY	μPD78014FY	μPD78015FY	μPD78016FY	μPD78018FY, μPD78P018FY
μPD78044F Subseries		μPD78042F	μPD78043F	μPD78044F	μPD78045F		μPD78P048A
μPD78044H Subseries				μPD78044H	μPD78045H	μPD78046H	μPD78P048B
μPD78054 Subseries		μPD78052	μPD78053	μPD78054, μPD78P054	μPD78055	μPD78056	μPD78058, μPD78P058
μPD78054Y Subseries		μPD78052Y	μPD78053Y	μPD78054Y, μPD78P054Y	μPD78055Y	μPD78056Y	μPD78058Y, μPD78P058Y
μPD78058F Subseries						μPD78056F	μPD78058F, μPD78P058F
μPD78058FY Subseries						μPD78056FY	μPD78058FY, μPD78P058FY
μPD78064 Subseries		μPD78062	μPD78063	μPD78064, μPD78P064			
μPD78064Y Subseries		μPD78062Y	μPD78063Y	μPD78064Y, μPD78P064Y			
μPD78064B Subseries				μPD78064B, μPD78P064B			

- Remarks**
1. The μPD78070A and 78070AY do not incorporate ROMs.
  2. The internal ROM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS).

★

Table 1-1. Internal ROM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (2/3)

Capacity Address space Subseries name	8 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	24 Kbytes	32 Kbytes	40 Kbytes	48 Kbytes	60 Kbytes
	0000H-1FFFH	0000H-3FFFH	0000H-5FFFH	0000H-7FFFH	0000H-9FFFH	0000H-BFFFH	0000H-EFFFH
$\mu$ PD78075B Subseries				$\mu$ PD78074B	$\mu$ PD78075B		
$\mu$ PD78075BY Subseries				$\mu$ PD78074BY	$\mu$ PD78075BY		
$\mu$ PD78078 Subseries						$\mu$ PD78076	$\mu$ PD78078, $\mu$ PD78P078
$\mu$ PD78078Y Subseries						$\mu$ PD78076Y	$\mu$ PD78078Y, $\mu$ PD78P078Y
$\mu$ PD78083 Subseries	$\mu$ PD78081	$\mu$ PD78082	$\mu$ PD78P083				
$\mu$ PD78098 Subseries				$\mu$ PD78094	$\mu$ PD78095	$\mu$ PD78096	$\mu$ PD78098A, $\mu$ PD78P098A
$\mu$ PD78098B Subseries					$\mu$ PD78095B	$\mu$ PD78096B	$\mu$ PD78098B, $\mu$ PD78P098B
$\mu$ PD780001	$\mu$ PD780001						
$\mu$ PD780018Y Subseries						$\mu$ PD780016Y	$\mu$ PD780018Y, $\mu$ PD78P0018Y
$\mu$ PD780024 Subseries	$\mu$ PD780021	$\mu$ PD780022	$\mu$ PD780023	$\mu$ PD780024			
$\mu$ PD780024Y Subseries	$\mu$ PD780021Y	$\mu$ PD780022Y	$\mu$ PD780023Y	$\mu$ PD780024Y			
$\mu$ PD780034 Subseries	$\mu$ PD780031	$\mu$ PD780032	$\mu$ PD780033	$\mu$ PD780034, $\mu$ PD78F0034			
$\mu$ PD780034Y Subseries	$\mu$ PD780031Y	$\mu$ PD780032Y	$\mu$ PD780033Y	$\mu$ PD780034Y, $\mu$ PD78F0034Y			
$\mu$ PD780058 Subseries			$\mu$ PD780053	$\mu$ PD780054	$\mu$ PD780055	$\mu$ PD780056	$\mu$ PD780058, $\mu$ PD78F0058
$\mu$ PD780058Y Subseries			$\mu$ PD780053Y	$\mu$ PD780054Y	$\mu$ PD780055Y	$\mu$ PD780056Y	$\mu$ PD780058Y, $\mu$ PD78F0058Y
$\mu$ PD780208 Subseries				$\mu$ PD780204	$\mu$ PD780205	$\mu$ PD780206	$\mu$ PD780208, $\mu$ PD78P0208

**Remark** The internal ROM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS).

★ **Table 1-1. Internal ROM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (3/3)**

Capacity Address space Subseries name	8 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	24 Kbytes	32 Kbytes	40 Kbytes	48 Kbytes	60 Kbytes
	0000H-1FFFH	0000H-3FFFH	0000H-5FFFH	0000H-7FFFH	0000H-9FFFH	0000H-BFFFH	0000H-EFFFH
μPD780228 Subseries						μPD780226	μPD780228, μPD78F0228
μPD780308 Subseries						μPD780306	μPD780308, μPD78P0308
μPD780308Y Subseries						μPD780306Y	μPD780308Y, μPD78P0308Y
μPD78P0914				μPD78P0914			
μPD780924 Subseries	μPD780921	μPD780922	μPD780923	μPD780924, μPD78F0924			
μPD780964 Subseries	μPD780961	μPD780962	μPD780963	μPD780964, μPD78F0964			

**Remark** The internal ROM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS).



### 1.3 Vector Table Area

The 64-byte area 0000H to 003FH is reserved as a vector table area. The  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input and program start addresses for branch upon generation of each interrupt request are stored in the vector table area. Of the 16-bit address, low-order 8 bits are stored at even addresses and high-order 8 bits are stored at odd addresses.

★ **Table 1-2. Vector Table ( $\mu\text{PD78002}$ , 78002Y, 78014, 78014Y, 78014H, 78018F, 78018FY Subseries and  $\mu\text{PD780001}$ )**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0010H	INTCSI1 <sup>Note 2</sup>
0004H	INTWDT	0012H	INTTM3
0006H	INTP0 <sup>Note 1</sup>	0014H	INTTM0 <sup>Note 1, 2</sup>
0008H	INTP1	0016H	INTTM1
000AH	INTP2	0018H	INTTM2
000CH	INTP3	001AH	INTAD <sup>Note 2</sup>
000EH	INTCSI0 <sup>Note 1</sup>	003EH	BRK instruction

- Notes**
1. Excluding  $\mu\text{PD780001}$
  2. Excluding  $\mu\text{PD78002}$  and 78002Y Subseries

★ **Table 1-3. Vector Table ( $\mu\text{PD78044F}$ , 78044H, 780208 Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0010H	INTCSI1
0004H	INTWDT	0012H	INTTM3
0006H	INTP0	0014H	INTTM0
0008H	INTP1	0016H	INTTM1
000AH	INTP2	0018H	INTTM2
000CH	INTP3/INTUD <sup>Note</sup>	001AH	INTAD
000EH	INTCSI0 <sup>Note</sup>	001CH	INTKS
		003EH	BRK instruction

**Note** The  $\mu\text{PD78044H}$  Subseries contain neither INTUD nor INTCSI0.

★ **Table 1-4. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78054, 78054Y, 78058F, 78058FY, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078, 78078Y Subseries and  $\mu$ PD78070A, 78070AY)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	001AH	INTSR/INTCSI2
0004H	INTWDT	001CH	INTST
0006H	INTP0	001EH	INTTM3
0008H	INTP1	0020H	INTTM00
000AH	INTP2	0022H	INTTM01
000CH	INTP3	0024H	INTTM1
000EH	INTP4	0026H	INTTM2
0010H	INTP5	0028H	INTAD
0012H	INTP6	002AH	INTTM5 <sup>Note</sup>
0014H	INTCSI0	002CH	INTTM6 <sup>Note</sup>
0016H	INTCSI1	003EH	BRK instruction
0018H	INTSER		

**Note** Only the  $\mu$ PD78075B, 78075BY, 78078, and 78078Y Subseries

★ **Table 1-5. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78064, 78064Y, 78064B, 780308, 780308Y, 780058, 780058Y Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	001AH	INTSR/INTCSI2
0004H	INTWDT	001CH	INTST
0006H	INTP0	001EH	INTTM3
0008H	INTP1	0020H	INTTM00
000AH	INTP2	0022H	INTTM01
000CH	INTP3	0024H	INTTM1
000EH	INTP4	0026H	INTTM2
0010H	INTP5	0028H	INTAD
0014H	INTCSI0	002AH	INTCSI1 <sup>Note 2</sup>
0016H	INTCSI1 <sup>Note 1</sup>	003EH	BRK instruction
0018H	INTSER		

**Notes 1.** Only the  $\mu$ PD780058 and 780058Y Subseries

**2.** Only the  $\mu$ PD780308 and 780308Y Subseries

**Table 1-6. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	001AH	INTSR/INTCSI2
0004H	INTWDT	001CH	INTST
0008H	INTP1	0028H	INTAD
000AH	INTP2	002AH	INTTM5
000CH	INTP3	002CH	INTTM6
0018H	INTSER	003EH	BRK instruction

★

**Table 1-7. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78098, 78098B Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0018H	INTSER
0004H	INTWDT	001AH	INTSR/INTCSI2
0006H	INTP0	001CH	INTST
0008H	INTP1	001EH	INTTM3
000AH	INTP2	0020H	INTTM00
000CH	INTP3	0022H	INTTM01
000EH	INTP4	0024H	INTTM1
0010H	INTP5	0026H	INTTM2
0012H	INTP6	0028H	INTAD
0014H	INTCSI0	002AH	INTIE
0016H	INTCSI1	003EH	BRK instruction

★

**Table 1-8. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780018Y Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0020H	INTTM00
0004H	INTWDT	0022H	INTTM01
0006H	INTP0	0024H	INTTM1
0008H	INTP1	0026H	INTTM2
000AH	INTP2	0028H	INTAD
000CH	INTP3	002AH	INTTM5
000EH	INTP4	002CH	INTTM6
0010H	INTP5	002EH	INTCSI4
0012H	INTP6	0030H	INTIIC
0016H	INTCSI1	003EH	BRK instruction
001EH	INTTM3		

★

**Table 1-9. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0018H	INTIIC0 <sup>Note2</sup>
0004H	INTWDT	001AH	INTWTI
0006H	INTP0	001CH	INTTM00
0008H	INTP1	001EH	INTTM01
000AH	INTP2	0020H	INTTM50
000CH	INTP3	0022H	INTTM51
000EH	INTSER0	0024H	INTAD0
0010H	INTSR0	0026H	INTWT
0012H	INTST0	0028H	INTKR
0014H	INTCSI30	003EH	BRK instruction
0016H	INTCSI31 <sup>Note 1</sup>		

**Notes 1.** Only the  $\mu$ PD780024 and 780034 Subseries

**2.** Only the  $\mu$ PD780024Y and 780034Y Subseries

★

**Table 1-10. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780228 Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	000EH	INTKS
0004H	INTWDT	0010H	INTCSI3
0006H	INTP0	0012H	INTTM50
0008H	INTP1	0014H	INTTM51
000AH	INTTM10	0016H	INTAD
000CH	INTTM11	003EH	BRK instruction

★

**Table 1-11. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD78P0914)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0012H	INTHS
0004H	INTWDT	0014H	INTTM6
0006H	INTVS	0016H	INTTM7
0008H	INTP1	0018H	INTTM8
000AH	INTP2	001AH	INTCS10
000CH	INTTM5	001CH	INTCS11
000EH	INTTM1	001EH	INTAD
0010H	INTTM2	003EH	BRK instruction

★

**Table 1-12. Vector Table ( $\mu$ PD780924, 780964 Subseries)**

Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request	Vector Table Address	Interrupt Request
0000H	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input	0014H	INTST0
0004H	INTWDT	0016H	INTSER1
0006H	INTP0	0018H	INTSR1
0008H	INTP1	001AH	INTST1
000AH	INTP2	001CH	INTTM50
000CH	INTP3	001EH	INTTM51
000EH	INTTM7	0020H	INTTM52
0010H	INTSER0	0022H	INTAD0
0012H	INTSR0	003EH	BRK instruction

## 1.4 CALLT Instruction Table Area

The 64-byte area 0040H to 007FH can store the subroutine entry address of a 1-byte call instruction (CALLT).

## 1.5 CALLF Instruction Entry Area

The 2048-byte area 0800H to 0FFFH can perform a direct subroutine call with a 2-byte call instruction (CALLF).

## 1.6 Internal Data Memory (Internal RAM) Space

The 78K/0 Series products incorporate the following RAMs. For the RAMs incorporated in each product, see **Table 1-13 Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products**.

### (1) Internal high-speed RAM

Each 78K/0 Series product incorporates an internal high-speed RAM in the address space shown in Table 1-13. In the 32-byte area FEE0H to FEFFH of these areas, 4 banks of general registers, each bank consisting of eight 8-bit registers, are allocated.

The internal high-speed RAM can also be used as a stack memory.

### (2) Buffer RAM

A buffer RAM is allocated to each area shown in Table 1-13. This RAM is used to store the transfer/receive data of the serial interface channel 1 (3-wired serial I/O mode with automatic transfer/receive function). If not used in this mode, the buffer RAM can also be used as an ordinary RAM area.

### (3) RAM for FIP™ display

A RAM for FIP display is allocated to each area shown in Table 1-13. This RAM can also be used as a normal RAM.

### (4) Internal expansion RAM

An internal expansion RAM is allocated to each area shown in Table 1-13.

### (5) RAM for LCD display

A RAM for LCD display is allocated to each area shown in Table 1-13. This RAM can also be used as a normal RAM.

★

**Table 1-13. Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (1/5)**

Subseries Name	Products	High-speed RAM	Buffer RAM	Extended RAM	RAM for FIP Display	RAM for LCD Display	
μPD78002 Subseries	μPD78001B	FE00H to FEFFH (256 bytes)	–	–	–	–	
	μPD78002B	FD80H to FEFFH (384 bytes)					
μPD78002Y Subseries	μPD78001BY	FE00H to FEFFH (256 bytes)	–	–	–	–	
	μPD78002BY	FD80H to FEFFH (384 bytes)					
μPD78014 Subseries	μPD78011B	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78012B						
	μPD78013	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78014						
μPD78P014							
μPD78014Y Subseries	μPD78011BY	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78012BY						
	μPD78013Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78014Y						
	μPD78P014Y						
μPD78014H Subseries	μPD78011H	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78012H						
	μPD78013H	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78014H						
μPD78018F Subseries	μPD78011F	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78012F						
	μPD78013F	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78014F						
	μPD78015F						F600H to F7FFH (512 bytes)
	μPD78016F						F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78018F						
	μPD78P018F						
μPD78018FY Subseries	μPD78011FY	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78012FY						
	μPD78013FY	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78014FY						
	μPD78015FY						F600H to F7FFH (512 bytes)
	μPD78016FY						F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78018FY						
	μPD78P018FY						

**Remark** The internal high-speed RAM capacity and expansion RAM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS) and internal expansion RAM size switching register (IXS).

★

**Table 1-13. Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (2/5)**

Subseries Name	Products	High-speed RAM	Buffer RAM	Extended RAM	RAM for FIP Display	RAM for LCD Display
μPD78044F Subseries	μPD78042F	FD00H to FEFFH	FAC0H to FAFFH (64 bytes)	–	FA50H to FA7FH (48 bytes)	–
	μPD78043F	(512 bytes)				
	μPD78044F	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)		F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		
	μPD78045F					
μPD78P048A						
μPD78044H Subseries	μPD78044H	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	–	–	FA50H to FA7FH (48 bytes)	–
	μPD78045H					
	μPD78046H			F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		
	μPD78P048B					
μPD78054 Subseries	μPD78052	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD78053	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD78054					
	μPD78P054					
	μPD78055					
	μPD78056					
	μPD78058	F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)				
μPD78P058						
μPD78054Y Subseries	μPD78052Y	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD78053Y					
	μPD78054Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD78055Y					
	μPD78056Y					
	μPD78058Y			F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		
μPD78P058Y						
μPD78058F Subseries	μPD78056F	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD78058F					
	μPD78P058F			F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		
μPD78058FY Subseries	μPD78056FY	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD78058FY					
	μPD78P058FY			F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		

**Remark** The internal high-speed RAM capacity and expansion RAM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS) and internal expansion RAM size switching register (IXS).



★

Table 1-13. Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (3/5)

Subseries Name	Products	High-speed RAM	Buffer RAM	Extended RAM	RAM for FIP Display	RAM for LCD Display	
μPD78064 Subseries	μPD78062	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	–	–	–	FA58H to FA7FH (40 x 4 bits)	
	μPD78063	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78064						
	μPD78P064						
μPD78064Y Subseries	μPD78062Y	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	–	–	–	FA58H to FA7FH (40 x 4 bits)	
	μPD78063Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)					
	μPD78064Y						
	μPD78P064Y						
μPD78064B Subseries	μPD78064B	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	–	–	–	FA58H to FA7FH (40 x 4 bits)	
	μPD78P064B						
μPD78070A	μPD78070A	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
μPD78070AY	μPD78070AY						
μPD78075B Subseries	μPD78074B	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78075B						
μPD78075BY Subseries	μPD78074BY	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78075BY						
μPD78078 Subseries	μPD78076	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)	–	–	
	μPD78078						
	μPD78P078						
μPD78078Y Subseries	μPD78076Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)	–	–	
	μPD78078Y						
	μPD78P078Y						
μPD78083 Subseries	μPD78081	FE00H to FEFFH (256 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78082	FD80H to FEFFH (384 bytes)					
	μPD78P083	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)					
μPD78098 Subseries	μPD78094	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–	
	μPD78095						
	μPD78096						
	μPD78098A						F000H to F7FFH (2048 bytes)
	μPD78P098A						

**Remark** The internal high-speed RAM capacity and expansion RAM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS) and internal expansion RAM size switching register (IXS).

★

**Table 1-13. Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (4/5)**

Subseries Name	Products	High-speed RAM	Buffer RAM	Extended RAM	RAM for FIP Display	RAM for LCD Display
μPD78098B Subseries	μPD78095B	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD78096B					
	μPD78098B			F000H to F7FFH (2048 bytes)		
	μPD78P098B					
μPD780001	μPD780001	FE40H to FEFFH (192 bytes)	–	–	–	–
μPD780018Y Subseries	μPD780016Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)	–	–
	μPD780018Y					
	μPD78P0018Y					
μPD780024 Subseries	μPD780021	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD780022					
	μPD780023	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD780024					
μPD780024Y Subseries	μPD780021Y	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD780022Y					
	μPD780023Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD780024Y					
μPD780034 Subseries	μPD780031	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD780032					
	μPD780033	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD780034					
	μPD78F0034					
μPD780034Y Subseries	μPD780031Y	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD780032Y					
	μPD780033Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD780034Y					
	μPD78F0034Y					
μPD780058 Subseries	μPD780053	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD780054					
	μPD780055					
	μPD780056					
	μPD780058			F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		
	μPD78F0058					

**Remark** The internal high-speed RAM capacity and expansion RAM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS) and internal expansion RAM size switching register (IXS).

★

Table 1-13. Internal RAM Space of 78K/0 Series Products (5/5)

Subseries Name	Products	High-speed RAM	Buffer RAM	Extended RAM	RAM for FIP Display	RAM for LCD Display
μPD780058Y Subseries	μPD780053Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (32 bytes)	–	–	–
	μPD780054Y					
	μPD780055Y					
	μPD780056Y			F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)		
	μPD780058Y					
	μPD78F0058Y					
μPD780208 Subseries	μPD780204	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	FAC0H to FADFH (64 bytes)	–	FA30H to FA7FH (80 bytes)	–
	μPD780205					
	μPD780206			F000H to F7FFH (2048 bytes)		
	μPD780208					
	μPD78F0208					
μPD780228 Subseries	μPD780226	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	–	F600H to F7FFH (512 bytes)	FA00H to FA5FH (96 bytes)	–
	μPD780228					
	μPD78F0228					
μPD780308 Subseries	μPD780306	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	–	F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)	–	FA58H to FA7FH (40 × 4 bits)
	μPD780308					
	μPD78P0308					
μPD780308Y Subseries	μPD780306Y	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)	–	F400H to F7FFH (1024 bytes)	–	FA58H to FA7FH (40 × 4 bits)
	μPD780308Y					
	μPD78P0308Y					
μPD78P0914	μPD78P0914	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	–	–	–	–
μPD780924 Subseries	μPD780921	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	–	–	–	–
	μPD780922					
	μPD780923	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD780924					
	μPD78F0924					
μPD780964 Subseries	μPD780961	FD00H to FEFFH (512 bytes)	–	–	–	–
	μPD780962					
	μPD780963	FB00H to FEFFH (1024 bytes)				
	μPD780964					
	μPD78F0964					

**Remark** The internal high-speed RAM capacity and expansion RAM capacity of PROM versions can be changed by manipulating the value of the memory size switching register (IMS) and internal expansion RAM size switching register (IXS).

## 1.7 Special Function Register (SFR) Area

An on-chip peripheral hardware special-function register (SFR) is allocated in the area FF00H to FFFFH. (Refer to **each product User's Manual**).

**Caution** Do not access addresses where the SFR is not assigned. If the address is carelessly accessed, the CPU may be deadlocked.

## 1.8 External Memory Space

This is an external memory space which can be accessed by setting the memory extension mode register. This space allows program and table data storage, and peripheral device assignment.

For products for which an external memory space can be used, refer to **Table 1-14 External Memory Space of 78K/0 Series Products**.

★

Table 1-14. External Memory Space of 78K/0 Series Products (1/3)

Subseries Name	Products	Address (capacity)
μPD78002, 78002Y Subseries	μPD78001B, 78001BY	2000H to FA7FH (55936 bytes)
	μPD78002B, 78002BY	4000H to FA7FH (47744 bytes)
	μPD78P014, 78P014Y <sup>Note 1</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78014, 78014Y Subseries	μPD78011B, 78011BY	2000H to FA7FH (55936 bytes)
	μPD78012B, 78012BY	4000H to FA7FH (47744 bytes)
	μPD78013, 78013Y	6000H to FA7FH (39552 bytes)
	μPD78014, 78014Y	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD78P014, 78P014Y <sup>Note 1</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78014H Subseries	μPD78011H	2000H to FA7FH (55936 bytes)
	μPD78012H	4000H to FA7FH (47744 bytes)
	μPD78013H	6000H to FA7FH (39552 bytes)
	μPD78014H	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD78P018F <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78018F, 78018FY Subseries	μPD78011F, 78011FY	2000H to FA7FH (55936 bytes)
	μPD78012F, 78012FY	4000H to FA7FH (47744 bytes)
	μPD78013F, 78013FY	6000H to FA7FH (39552 bytes)
	μPD78014F, 78014FY	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD78015F, 78015FY	A000H to F5FFH (22016 bytes)
	μPD78016F, 78016FY	C000H to F5FFH (13824 bytes)
	μPD78018F, 78018FY <sup>Note 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78P018F, 78P018FY <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)	
μPD78054, 78054Y Subseries	μPD78052, 78052Y	4000H to FA7FH (47744 bytes)
	μPD78053, 78053Y	6000H to FA7FH (39552 bytes)
	μPD78054, 78054Y	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD78P054, 78P054Y <sup>Note 1</sup>	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD78055, 78055Y	A000H to FA7FH (23168 bytes)
	μPD78056, 78056Y	C000H to FA7FH (14976 bytes)
	μPD78058, 78058Y <sup>Note 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78P058, 78P058Y <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78058F, 78058FY Subseries	μPD78056F, 78056FY	C000H to FA7FH (14976 bytes)
	μPD78058F, 78058FY <sup>Note 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78P058F, 78P058FY <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78070A, 78070AY	μPD78070A, 78070AY	0000H to FA7FH (64128 bytes)

**Notes 1.** The external memory capacity of PROM and flash memory versions can be changed by using the memory size switching register (IMS).

**2.** When an internal ROM is set to 60 Kbytes, the area of F000H to F3FFH is not available. Setting the internal ROM to 56 Kbytes or less enables the area of F000H to F3FFH to be used as an external memory.

★ **Table 1-14. External Memory Space of 78K/0 Series Products (2/3)**

Subseries Name	Products	Address (capacity)
μPD78075B, 78075BY Subseries	μPD78074B, 78074BY	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD78075B, 78075BY	A000H to FA7FH (23168 bytes)
	μPD78P078, 78P078Y <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78078, 78078Y Subseries	μPD78076, 78076Y	C000H to FA7FH (13312 bytes)
	μPD78078, 78078Y <sup>Note 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78P078, 78P078Y <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78098 Subseries	μPD78094	8000H to EFFFH (28672 bytes)
	μPD78095	A000H to EFFFH (20480 bytes)
	μPD78096	C000H to EFFFH (12288 bytes)
	μPD78098A <sup>Note 3</sup>	E000H to EFFFH (4096 bytes)
	μPD78P098A <sup>Notes 1, 3</sup>	E000H to EFFFH (4096 bytes)
μPD78098B Subseries	μPD78095B	A000H to EFFFH (20480 bytes)
	μPD78096B	C000H to EFFFH (12288 bytes)
	μPD78098B <sup>Note 3</sup>	E000H to EFFFH (4096 bytes)
	μPD78P098B <sup>Notes 1, 3</sup>	E000H to EFFFH (4096 bytes)
μPD780018Y Subseries	μPD780016Y	C000H to FA7FH (13312 bytes)
	μPD780018Y <sup>Note 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78P0018Y <sup>Notes 1, 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD780024, 780024Y Subseries	μPD780021, 780021Y	2000H to F7FFH (55296 bytes)
	μPD780022, 780022Y	4000H to F7FFH (47104 bytes)
	μPD780023, 780023Y	6000H to F7FFH (38912 bytes)
	μPD780024, 780024Y	8000H to F7FFH (30720 bytes)
	μPD78F0034, 78F0034Y <sup>Note 1</sup>	8000H to F7FFH (30720 bytes)
μPD780034, 780034Y Subseries	μPD780031, 780031Y	2000H to F7FFH (55296 bytes)
	μPD780032, 780032Y	4000H to F7FFH (47104 bytes)
	μPD780033, 780033Y	6000H to F7FFH (38912 bytes)
	μPD780034, 780034Y	8000H to F7FFH (30720 bytes)
	μPD78F0034, 78F0034Y <sup>Note 1</sup>	8000H to F7FFH (30720 bytes)

- Notes 1.** The external memory capacity of PROM and flash memory versions can be changed by using the memory size switching register (IMS).
- When an internal ROM is set to 60 Kbytes, the area of F000H to F3FFH is not available. Setting the internal ROM to 56 Kbytes or less (or to 48 Kbytes only for the μPD78P0018Y) enables the area of F000H to F3FFH to be used as an external memory.
  - When an internal ROM is set to 60 Kbytes, the area of E000H to EFFFH is not available. By setting the internal ROM to 56 Kbytes or less, the internal ROM can be used as an external memory within the range of the last address to EFFFH.

★

**Table 1-14. External Memory Space of 78K/0 Series Products (3/3)**

Subseries Name	Products	Address (capacity)
μPD780058, 780058Y Subseries	μPD780053, 780053Y	6000H to FA7FH (39552 bytes)
	μPD780054, 780054Y	8000H to FA7FH (31360 bytes)
	μPD780055, 780055Y	A000H to FA7FH (23168 bytes)
	μPD780056, 780056Y	C000H to FA7FH (14976 bytes)
	μPD780058, 780058Y <sup>Note 2</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
	μPD78F0058, 78F0058Y <sup>Note 1</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (1024 bytes)
μPD78P0914	μPD78P0914 <sup>Note 1</sup>	8000H to F7FFH (30720 bytes)
μPD780924 Subseries	μPD780921	6000H to FA7FH (55296 bytes)
	μPD780922	8000H to FA7FH (47104 bytes)
	μPD780923	A000H to FA7FH (38912 bytes)
	μPD780924	C000H to FA7FH (30720 bytes)
	μPD78F0924 <sup>Note 1</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (30720 bytes)
μPD780964 Subseries	μPD780961	6000H to FA7FH (55296 bytes)
	μPD780962	8000H to FA7FH (47104 bytes)
	μPD780963	A000H to FA7FH (38912 bytes)
	μPD780964	C000H to FA7FH (30720 bytes)
	μPD78F0964 <sup>Note 1</sup>	F000H to F3FFH (30720 bytes)

**Notes 1.** The external memory capacity of PROM and flash memory versions can be changed by using the memory size switching register (IMS).

**2.** When an internal ROM is set to 60 Kbytes, the area of F000H to F3FFH is not available. Setting the internal ROM to 56 Kbytes or less enables the area of F000H to F3FFH to be used as an external memory.

★

### 1.9 IEBus™ Register Area (μPD78098 and 78098B Subseries Only)

IEBus registers that are used to control the IEBus controller are allocated to the area of F8E0H to F8FFH.

[MEMO]



## CHAPTER 2 REGISTER

### 2.1 Control Registers

The control registers control the program sequence, statuses and stack memory. A program counter, a program status word and a stack pointer are control registers.

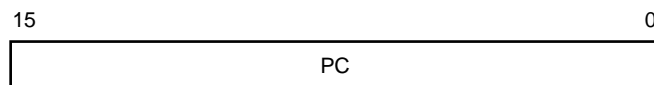
#### 2.1.1 Program counter (PC)

The program counter is a 16-bit register which holds the address information of the next program to be executed.

In normal operation, the PC is automatically incremented according to the number of bytes of the instruction to be fetched. When a branch instruction is executed, immediate data and register contents are set.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets the reset vector table values at addresses 0000H and 0001H to the program counter.

**Figure 2-1. Program Counter Configuration**



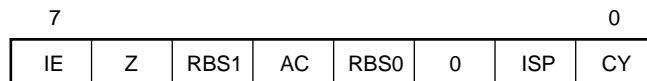
#### 2.1.2 Program status word (PSW)

The program status word is an 8-bit register consisting of various flags to be set/reset by instruction execution.

Program status word contents are automatically stacked upon interrupt request generation or PUSH PSW instruction execution and are automatically reset upon execution of the RETB, RETI and POP PSW instructions.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets the PSW to 02H.

**Figure 2-2. Program Status Word Configuration**



**(1) Interrupt enable flag (IE)**

This flag controls interrupt request acknowledge operations of CPU.

When IE = 0, the IE is set to interrupt disable (DI), and interrupts other than non-maskable interrupts are all disabled.

When IE = 1, the IE is set to interrupt enable (EI), and an interrupt request acknowledge is controlled with an in-service priority flag (ISP), an interrupt mask flag for various interrupt sources, and a priority specification flag.

This flag is reset (0) upon the DI instruction execution or interrupt request acknowledgment and is set (1) upon execution of the EI instruction.

**(2) Zero flag (Z)**

When the operation result is zero, this flag is set to (1). It is reset to (0) in all other cases.

**(3) Register bank select flags (RBS0 and RBS1)**

These are 2-bit flags to select one of the four register banks.

In these flags, the 2-bit information which indicates the register bank selected by SBL RBN instruction execution is stored.

**(4) Auxiliary carry flag (AC)**

If the operation result has a carry from bit 3 or a borrow at bit 3, this flag is set to (1). It is reset to (0) in all other cases.

**(5) In-service priority flag (ISP)**

This flag manages the priority of acknowledgeable, maskable vectored interrupts. When ISP = 0, vectored interrupt requests specified to the low level with the priority specification flag register (PR) are disabled for acknowledgment. Actual acknowledgment for interrupt requests is controlled by the state of the interrupt enable flag (IE).

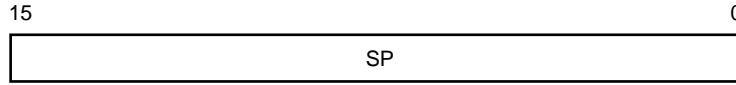
**(6) Carry flag (CY)**

This flag stores overflow and underflow upon add/subtract instruction execution. It stores the shift-out value upon rotate instruction execution and functions as a bit accumulator during bit manipulation instruction execution.

2.1.3 Stack pointer (SP)

This is a 16-bit register to hold the start address of the memory stack area. Only the internal high-speed RAM area can be set as the stack area.

Figure 2-3. Stack Pointer Configuration



The SP is decremented ahead of write (save) to the stack memory and is incremented after read (reset) from the stack memory.

Each stack operation saves/resets data as shown in Figures 2-4 and 2-5.

**Caution** Since  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes SP contents undefined, be sure to initialize the SP before instruction execution.

Figure 2-4. Data to be Saved to Stack Memory

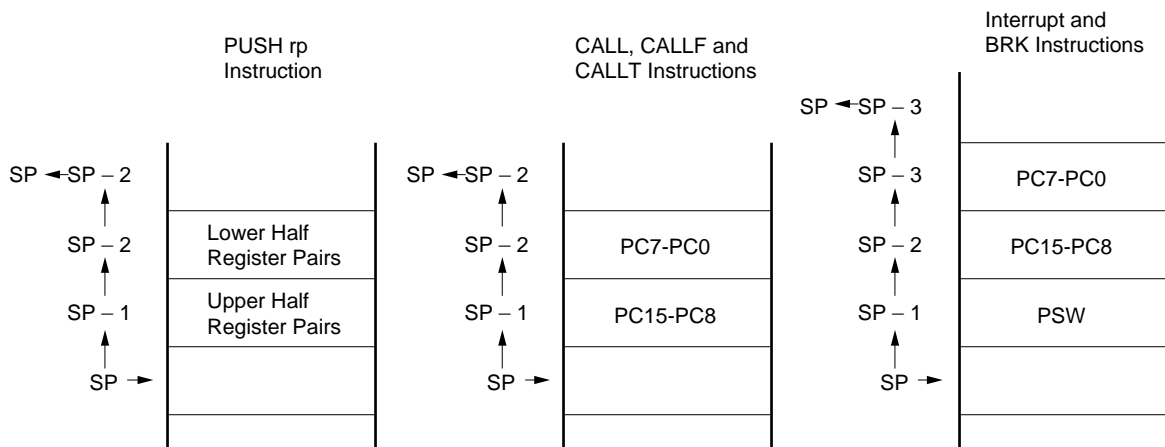
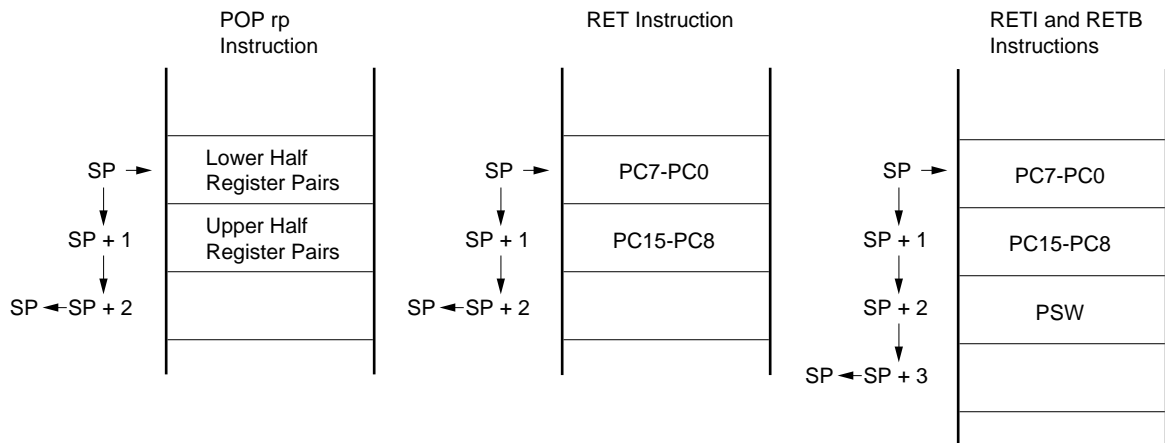


Figure 2-5. Data to be Reset from Stack Memory



## 2.2 General Registers

A general register is mapped at particular addresses (FEE0H to FEFFH) of the data memory. It consists of 4 banks, each bank consisting of eight 8-bit registers (X, A, C, B, E, D, L and H).

In addition that each register can be used as an 8-bit register, two 8-bit registers in pairs can be used as a 16-bit register (AX, BC, DE and HL).

They can be described in terms of functional names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE and HL) and absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3).

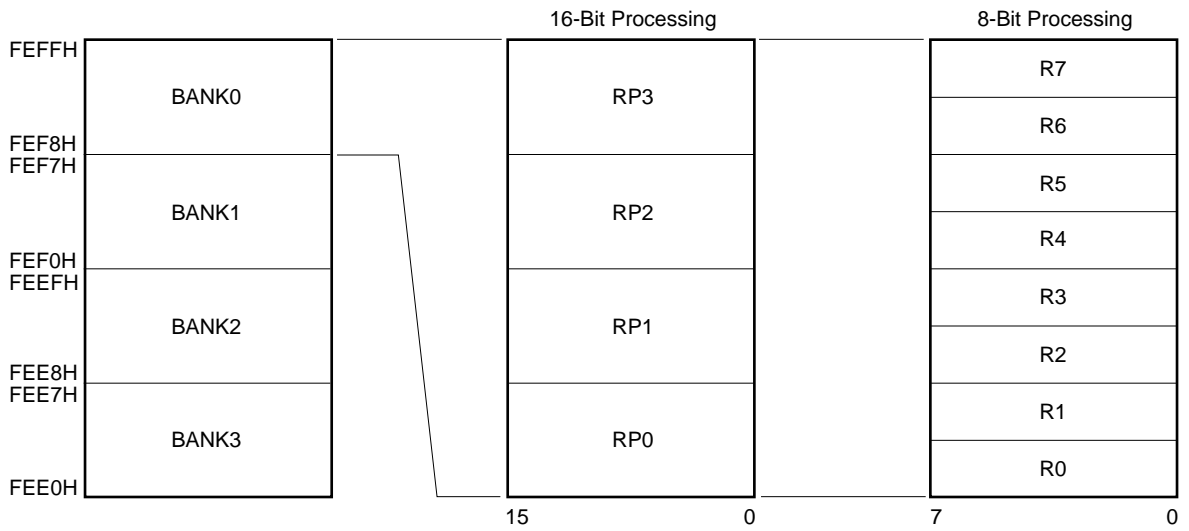
Register banks to be used for instruction execution are set with the CPU control instruction (SEL RBn). Because of the 4-register bank configuration, an efficient program can be created by switching between a register for normal processing and a register for interruption for each bank.

**Table 2-1. General Register Absolute Address Correspondence Table**

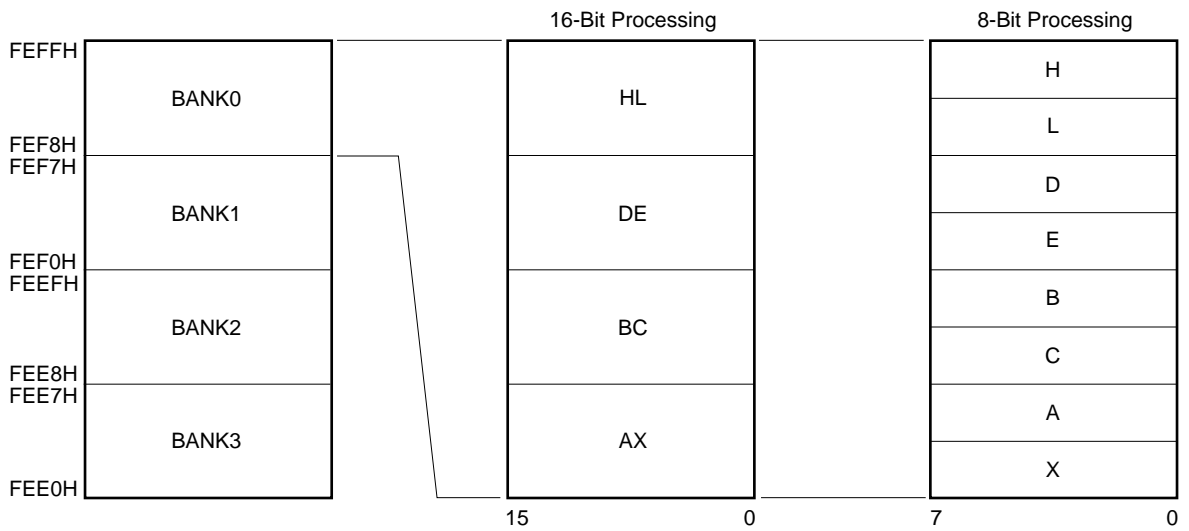
Bank Name	Register		Absolute Address	Bank Name	Register		Absolute Address
	Functional Name	Absolute Name			Functional Name	Absolute Name	
BANK0	H	R7	FEFFH	BANK2	H	R7	FEEFH
	L	R6	FEFEH		L	R6	FEEEH
	D	R5	FEFDH		D	R5	FEEDH
	E	R4	FEFCH		E	R4	FEECH
	B	R3	FEFBH		B	R3	FEEBH
	C	R2	FEFAH		C	R2	FEEAH
	A	R1	FEF9H		A	R1	FEE9H
	X	R0	FEF8H		X	R0	FEE8H
BANK1	H	R7	FEF7H	BANK3	H	R7	FEE7H
	L	R6	FEF6H		L	R6	FEE6H
	D	R5	FEF5H		D	R5	FEE5H
	E	R4	FEF4H		E	R4	FEE4H
	B	R3	FEF3H		B	R3	FEE3H
	C	R2	FEF2H		C	R2	FEE2H
	A	R1	FEF1H		A	R1	FEE1H
	X	R0	FEF0H		X	R0	FEE0H

Figure 2-6. General Register Configuration

(a) Absolute Names



(b) Functional Names



### 2.3 Special-Function Register (SFR)

Unlike a general register, each special-function register has a special function.

It is allocated in the 256-byte area FF00H to FFFFH.

The special-function register can be manipulated, like the general register, with the operation, transfer and bit manipulation instructions. Manipulatable bit units (1, 8, and 16) differ depending on the special-function register type.

Each manipulation bit unit can be specified as follows.

- 1-bit manipulation  
Describes a symbol reserved with assembler for the 1-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfr.bit). This manipulation can also be specified with an address.
- 8-bit manipulation  
Describes a symbol reserved with assembler for the 8-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfr). This manipulation can also be specified with an address.
- 16-bit manipulation  
Describes a symbol reserved with assembler for the 16-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfrp). When addressing an address, describe an even address.

With the special function register, refer to **each product User's Manual**.

**Caution** Do not access addresses where the SFR is not assigned. If the address is carelessly accessed, the CPU may be deadlocked.

## CHAPTER 3 ADDRESSING

### 3.1 Instruction Address Addressing

An instruction address is determined by program counter (PC) contents. The PC contents are normally incremented (+1 for each byte) automatically according to the number of bytes of an instruction to be fetched each time another instruction is executed. When a branch instruction is executed, the branch destination information is set to the PC and branched by the following addressing (For details of each instruction, refer to **CHAPTER 5 EXPLANATION OF INSTRUCTIONS**).

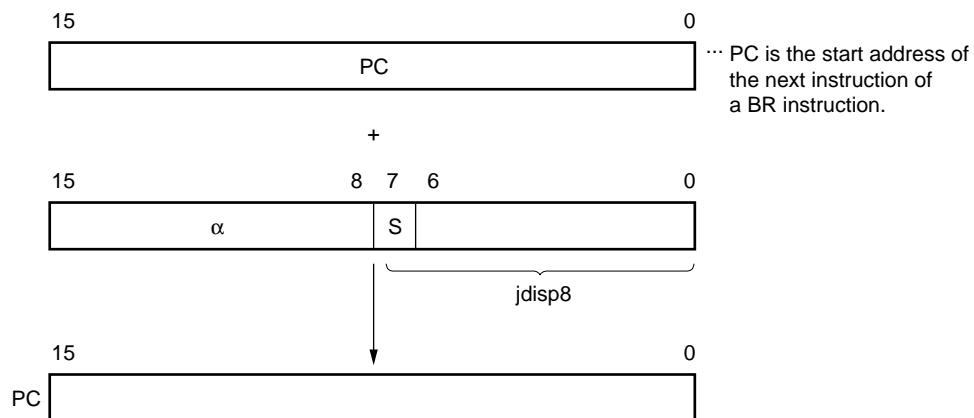
#### 3.1.1 Relative addressing

##### [Function]

The value obtained by adding 8-bit immediate data (displacement value: *jdisp8*) of an instruction code to the start address of the following instruction is transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched. The displacement value is treated as signed two's complement data (−128 to +127) and bit 7 becomes a sign bit. In other words, in relative addressing, the value is relatively transferred to the range between −128 and +127 from the start address of the following instruction.

This function is carried out when the “BR \$addr16” instruction or a conditional branch instruction is executed.

##### [Illustration]



When  $S = 0$ ,  $\alpha$  indicates all bits "0".  
When  $S = 1$ ,  $\alpha$  indicates all bits "1".

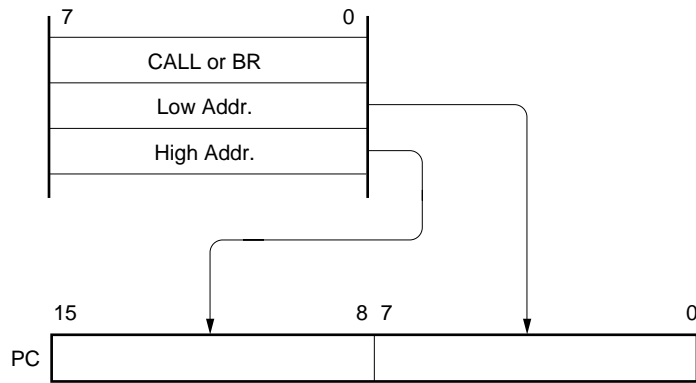
3.1.2 Immediate addressing

[Function]

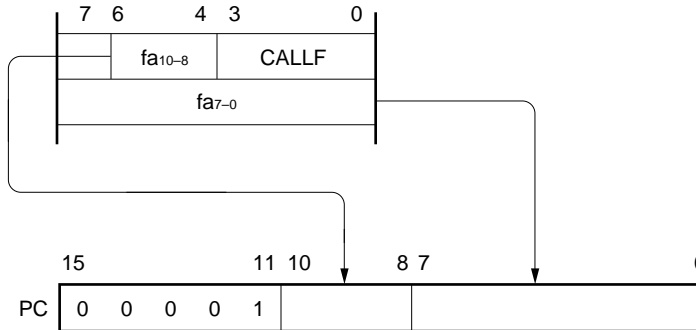
Immediate data in the instruction word is transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched. This function is carried out when the “CALL !addr16” or “BR !addr16” or “CALLF !addr11” instruction is executed. The CALL !addr16 and BR !addr16 instructions can be branched to all memory spaces. The CALLF !addr11 instruction is branched to the area of 0800H to 0FFFH.

[Illustration]

In case of CALL !addr16, BR !addr16 instruction



In case of CALLF !addr11 instruction





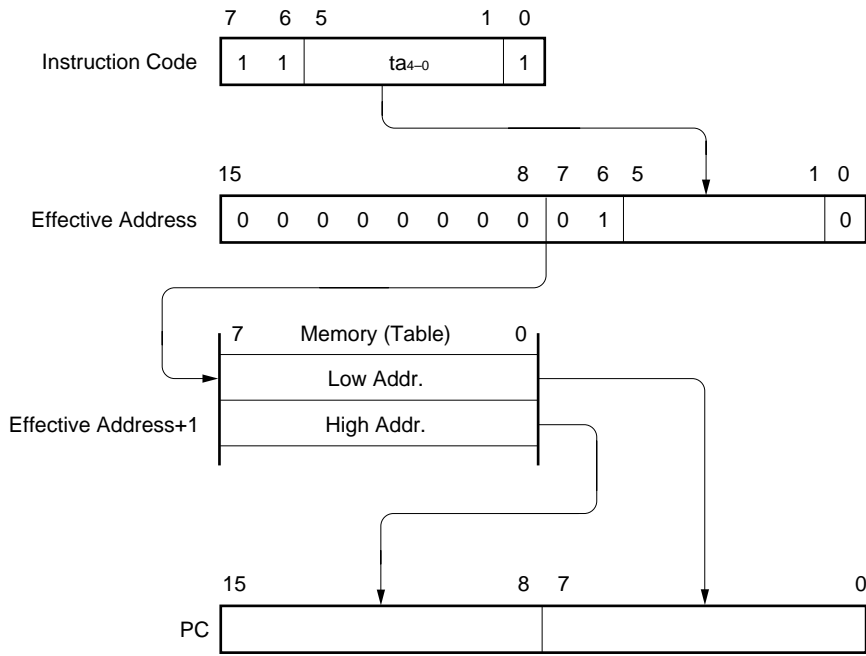
3.1.3 Table indirect addressing

[Function]

Table contents (branch destination address) of the particular location to be addressed by the low-order-5-bit immediate data of an instruction code from bit 1 to bit 5 are transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

When the "CALLT [addr5]" instruction is executed, a table indirect addressing is performed. Executing this instruction enables the value to be branched to all memory spaces referencing the address stored to the memory table of 40H to 7FH.

[Illustration]

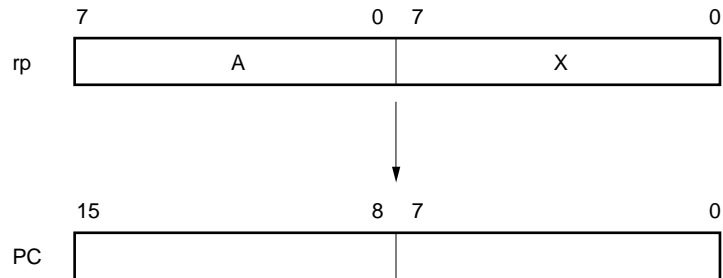


### 3.1.4 Register addressing

**[Function]**

Register pair (AX) contents to be specified with an instruction word are transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

This function is carried out when the "BR AX" instruction is executed.

**[Illustration]**

## 3.2 Operand Address Addressing

The following various methods are available to specify the register and memory (addressing) which undergo manipulation during instruction execution.

### 3.2.1 Implied addressing

#### [Function]

This addressing automatically specifies to an address the register which functions as an accumulator (A and AX) in the general register.

Of the 78K/0 Series instruction words, the following instructions employ implied addressings.

Instruction	Register to be Specified by Implied Addressing
MULU <sup>Note</sup>	A register for multiplicand and AX register for product storage
DIVUW <sup>Note</sup>	AX register for dividend and quotient storage
ADJBA/ADJBS	A register for storage of numeric values which become decimal correction
ROR4/ROL4	A register for storage of digit data which undergoes digit rotation

**Note** The  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y Subseries have no MULU/DIVUW instructions.

#### [Operand format]

Because implied addressing can be automatically employed with an instruction, no particular operand format is necessary.

#### [Description example]

In the case of MULU X

With an 8-bit x 8-bit multiply instruction, the product of A register and X register is stored in AX. In this example, the A and AX registers are specified by implied addressing.

### 3.2.2 Register addressing

**[Function]**

Register addressing accesses the general-purpose register as an operand. The general-purpose register to be accessed is specified by the register bank selection flags (RBS0 and RBS1) and the register specification codes (Rn and RPn) among instruction codes.

Register addressing is carried out when an instruction with the following operand format is executed. When an 8-bit register is specified, one of the eight registers is specified with 3 bits in the instruction code.

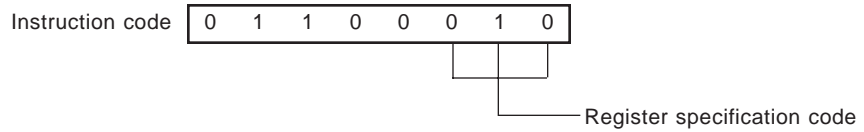
**[Operand format]**

Identifier	Description
r	X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H
rp	AX, BC, DE, HL

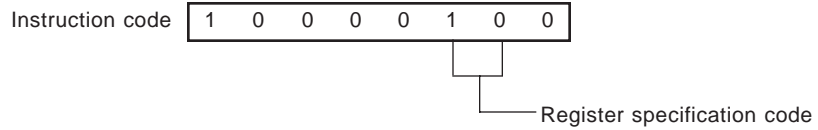
'r' and 'rp' can be described with absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3) as well as function names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE and HL).

**[Description example]**

MOV A, C; When selecting the C register for r



INCW DE; When selecting the DE register pair for rp



### 3.2.3 Direct addressing

**[Function]**

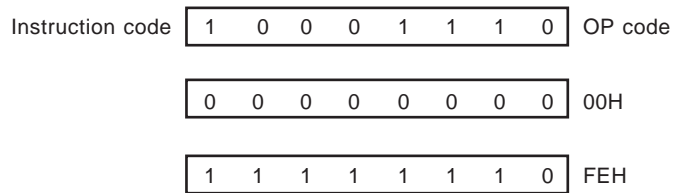
Direct addressing directly addresses the memory indicated by the immediate data in the instruction word.

**[Operand format]**

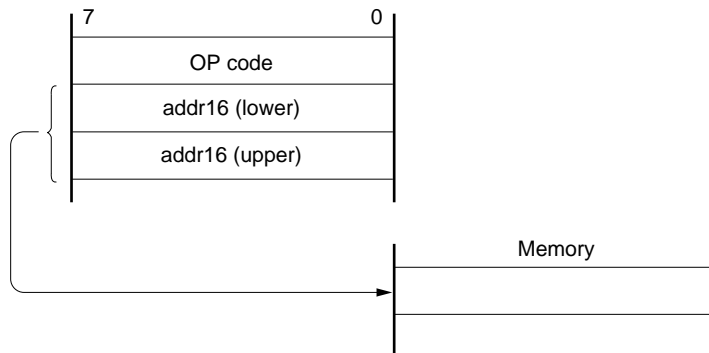
Identifier	Description
addr16	Label or 16-bit immediate data

**[Description example]**

MOV A, !FE00H; When setting !addr16 to FE00H



**[Illustration]**



3.2.4 Short direct addressing

[Function]

The memory to be manipulated in the fixed space is directly addressed with 8-bit data in an instruction word. This addressing is applied to the 256-byte fixed space FE20H to FF1FH. An internal high-speed RAM and a special-function register (SFR) are mapped at FE20H to FEFFH and FF00H to FF1FH, respectively. The SFR area (FF00H to FF1FH) where short direct addressing is applied is a part of the entire SFR area. Ports which are frequently accessed in a program, a compare register of the timer/event counter and a capture register of the timer/event counter are mapped in the area FF00H through FF1FH, and these SFRs can be manipulated with a small number of bytes and clocks.

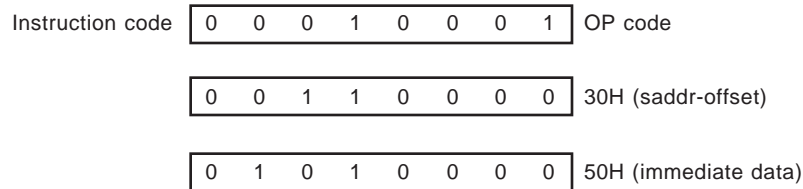
When 8-bit immediate data is at 20H to FFH, bit 8 of an effective address is set to 0. When it is at 00H to 1FH, bit 8 is set to 1. See [Illustration] below.

[Operand format]

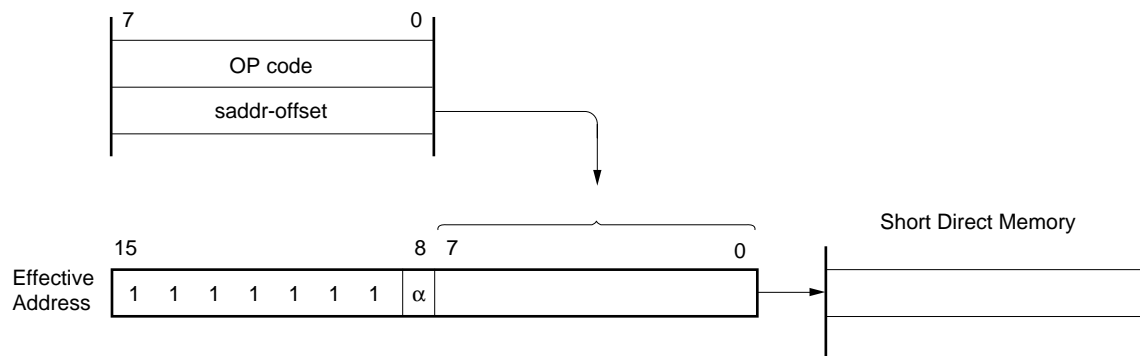
Identifier	Description
saddr	Label or FE20H to FF1FH immediate data
saddrp	Label or FE20H to FF1FH immediate data (even address only)

[Description example]

MOV FE30H, #50H; When setting saddr to FE30H and the immediate data to 50H



[Illustration]



When 8-bit immediate data is 20H to FFH,  $\alpha = 0$ .  
 When 8-bit immediate data is 00H to 1FH,  $\alpha = 1$ .

3.2.5 Special-function register (SFR) addressing

**[Function]**

The memory-mapped special-function register (SFR) is addressed with 8-bit immediate data in an instruction word.

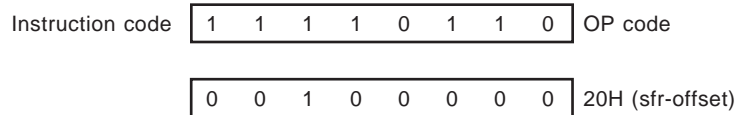
This addressing is applied to the 240-byte spaces FF00H to FFCFH and FFE0H to FFFFH. However, the SFR mapped at FF00H to FF1FH can be accessed with short direct addressing.

**[Operand format]**

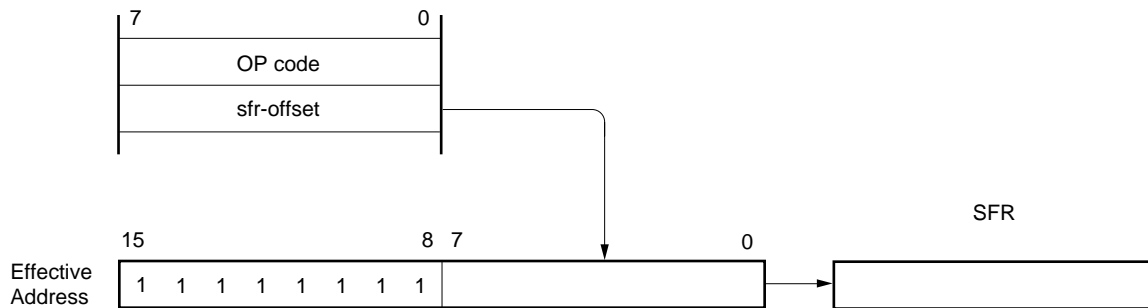
Identifier	Description
sfr	Special-function register name
sfrp	16-bit manipulatable special-function register name (even address only)

**[Description example]**

MOV PM0, A; When selecting PM0 for sfr



**[Illustration]**



3.2.6 Register indirect addressing

[Function]

The register indirect addressing addresses memory with register pair contents specified as an operand. The register pair to be accessed is specified by the register bank selection flags (RBS0 and RBS1) and the register pair specification in instruction codes.

[Operand format]

Identifier	Description
—	[DE], [HL]

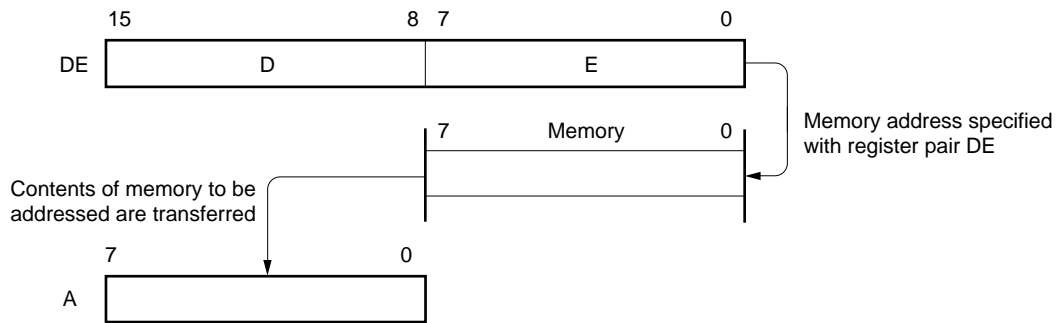
[Description example]

MOV A, [DE]; When selecting register pair [DE]

Instruction code 

1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

[Illustration]





### 3.2.7 Based addressing

#### [Function]

8-bit immediate data is added to the contents of the HL register pair as a base register and the sum is used to address the memory. The HL register pair to be accessed is in the register bank specified with the register bank select flag (RBS0 and RBS1). Addition is performed by expanding the offset data as a positive number to 16 bits. A carry from the 16th bit is ignored. This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

#### [Operand format]

Identifier	Description
—	[HL+byte]

#### [Description example]

MOV A, [HL+10H]; When setting byte to 10H

Instruction code	1 0 1 0 1 1 1 0
	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0

**3.2.8 Based indexed addressing****[Function]**

The B or C register contents specified in an instruction word are added to the contents of the HL register pair as a base register and the sum is used to address the memory. The HL, B, and C registers to be accessed are registers in the register bank specified with the register bank select flag (RBS0 to RBS1). Addition is performed by expanding the B or C register as a positive number to 16 bits. A carry from the 16th bit is ignored. This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

**[Operand format]**

Identifier	Description
—	[HL+B], [HL+C]

**[Description example]**

In the case of MOV A, [HL+B]

Instruction code 

1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

### 3.2.9 Stack addressing

**[Function]**

The stack area is indirectly addressed with the stack pointer (SP) contents.

This addressing method is automatically employed when the PUSH, POP, subroutine call and RETURN instructions are executed or the register is saved/reset upon generation of an interrupt request.

Stack addressing enables to address the internal high-speed RAM area only.

**[Description example]**

In the case of PUSH DE

Instruction code 

1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

This chapter covers the list of 78K/0 Series instruction set. The instructions are common to all the 78K/0 Series products.

## 4.1 Operation

### 4.1.1 Operand identifiers and description methods

Operands are described in “Operand” column of each instruction in accordance with the description method of the instruction operand identifier (refer to the assembler specifications for detail). When there are two or more description methods, select one of them. Alphabetic letters in capitals and symbols, #, !, \$ and [ ] are key words and are described as they are. Each symbol has the following meaning.

- # : Immediate data specification
- ! : Absolute address specification
- \$ : Relative address specification
- [ ] : Indirect address specification

In the case of immediate data, describe an appropriate numeric value or a label. When using a label, be sure to describe the #, !, \$ and [ ] symbols.

For operand register identifiers, r and rp, either function names (X, A, C, etc.) or absolute names (names in parentheses in the table below, R0, R1, R2, etc.) can be used for description.

**Table 4-1. Operand Identifiers and Description Methods**

Identifier	Description Method
r	X (R0), A (R1), C (R2), B (R3), E (R4), D (R5), L (R6), H (R7)
rp	AX (RP0), BC (RP1), DE (RP2), HL (RP3)
sfr	Special-function register symbol <sup>Note</sup>
sfrp	Special-function register symbols (16-bit manipulatable register even addresses only) <sup>Note</sup>
saddr	FE20H to FF1FH Immediate data or labels
saddrp	FE20H to FF1FH Immediate data or labels (even addresses only)
addr16	0000H to FFFFH Immediate data or labels (Only even addresses for 16-bit data transfer instructions)
addr11	0800H to 0FFFH Immediate data or labels
addr5	0040H to 007FH Immediate data or labels (even addresses only)
word	16-bit immediate data or label
byte	8-bit immediate data or label
bit	3-bit immediate data or label
RBn	RB0 to RB3

**Note** FFD0H to FFDFH are not addressable.

**Remark** Refer to **each product User’s Manual** for symbols of special function registers.

**4.1.2 Description of “operation” column**

A	: A register; 8-bit accumulator
X	: X register
B	: B register
C	: C register
D	: D register
E	: E register
H	: H register
L	: L register
AX	: AX register pair; 16-bit accumulator
BC	: BC register pair
DE	: DE register pair
HL	: HL register pair
PC	: Program counter
SP	: Stack pointer
PSW	: Program status word
CY	: Carry flag
AC	: Auxiliary carry flag
Z	: Zero flag
RBS	: Register bank select flag
IE	: Interrupt request enable flag
NMIS	: Flag indicating non-maskable interrupt servicing in progress
( )	: Memory contents indicated by address or register contents in parentheses
X <sub>H</sub> , X <sub>L</sub>	: Higher 8 bits and lower 8 bits of 16-bit register
∧	: Logical product (AND)
∨	: Logical sum (OR)
⊕	: Exclusive logical sum (exclusive OR)
—	: Inverted data
addr16	: 16-bit immediate data or label
jdisp8	: Signed 8-bit data (displacement value)

**4.1.3 Description of “flag operation” column**

(Blank)	: Unchanged
0	: Cleared to 0
1	: Set to 1
×	: Set/cleared according to the result
R	: Previously saved value is restored

#### 4.1.4 Description of “clock” column

The number of clock cycles during instruction execution is outlined as follows.

1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

##### (1) Classification of “clock” column

The number of instruction clocks differs in the following two cases.

<1> When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed, or in the instruction with no data access

<2> When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed

##### (2) When “n” or “m” is written in “clock” column

n indicates the number of waits when external memory expansion area is read.

m indicates the number of waits when external memory expansion area is written to.

##### (3) Number of clocks if program is stored in external ROM

<1> When no wait cycle is inserted

The number of clocks is the same as when the program is stored in the internal ROM area.

<2> When wait cycle is inserted

★ The number of clocks differs depending on the product. There are the following three product groups classified according to the number of clocks.

- With  $\mu$ PD78002, 78002Y, 78014, 78014Y, 78014H, 78018F, 78018FY, 78P0914 Subseries

The number of clocks increases by “**the number of bytes  $\times$  number of wait cycles  $\times$  2**”, as compared with when the program is stored in the internal ROM area.

- $\mu$ PD78054, 78054Y, 78058F, 78058FY, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078, 78078Y, 78098, 78098B, 780018Y, 780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y, 780058, 780058Y, 780308, 780308Y, 780924, 780964 Subseries

The number of clocks increases by “**the number of bytes  $\times$  number of wait cycles**”, as compared with when the program is stored in the internal ROM area.

- $\mu$ PD78070A, 78070AY

The  $\mu$ PD78070A and 78070AY do not incorporate an internal ROM area.

The number of clocks depends on the instruction (See **4.1.5 Operation list (4)**).

The number of clocks during instruction execution differs in the product. These are divided into the following four groups.

- $\mu$ PD78002, 78002Y, 78014, 78014Y, 78014H, 78018F, 78018FY Subseries and  $\mu$ PD780001, 78P0914
- $\mu$ PD78044F, 78044H, 78064, 78064Y, 78064B, 780208, 780228 Subseries
- $\mu$ PD78054, 78054Y, 78058F, 78058FY, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078, 78078Y, 78083, 78098, 78098B, 780018Y, 780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y, 780058, 780058Y, 780308, 780308Y, 780924, 780964 Subseries
- $\mu$ PD78070A, 78070AY

The operation list for each product is shown below.



4.1.5 Operation list

★ (1)  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y/78014/78014Y/78014H/78018F/78018FY Subseries and  $\mu$ PD780001, 78P0914

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOV</b>	r,#byte	2	8	–	$r \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		saddr,#byte	3	12	14	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		sfr,#byte	3	–	14	$\text{sfr} \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	1	4	–	$A \leftarrow r$				
		r,A <small>Note 3</small>	1	4	–	$r \leftarrow A$				
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A \leftarrow (\text{saddr})$				
		saddr,A	2	8	10	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,sfr	2	–	10	$A \leftarrow \text{sfr}$				
		sfr,A	2	–	10	$\text{sfr} \leftarrow A$				
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{addr16})$				
		!addr16,A	3	16	18+2m	$(\text{addr16}) \leftarrow A$				
		PSW,#byte	3	–	14	$\text{PSW} \leftarrow \text{byte}$		x	x	x
		A,PSW	2	–	10	$A \leftarrow \text{PSW}$				
		PSW,A	2	–	10	$\text{PSW} \leftarrow A$		x	x	x
		A,[DE]	1	8	10+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{DE})$				
		[DE],A	1	8	10+2m	$(\text{DE}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL})$				
		[HL],A	1	8	10+2m	$(\text{HL}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$				
		[HL+byte],A	2	16	18+2m	$(\text{HL}+\text{byte}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+B]	1	12	14+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{B})$				
		[HL+B],A	1	12	14+2m	$(\text{HL}+\text{B}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+C]	1	12	14+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{C})$				
		[HL+C],A	1	12	14+2m	$(\text{HL}+\text{C}) \leftarrow A$				

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except  $r = A$ .

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>XCH</b>	A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	1	4	–	A ↔ r			
		A,saddr	2	8	12	A ↔ (saddr)			
		A,sfr	2	–	12	A ↔ (sfr)			
		A,!addr16	3	16	20+2n+2m	A ↔ (addr16)			
		A,[DE]	1	8	12+2n+2m	A ↔ (DE)			
		A,[HL]	1	8	12+2n+2m	A ↔ (HL)			
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	20+2n+2m	A ↔ (HL+byte)			
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	20+2n+2m	A ↔ (HL+B)			
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	20+2n+2m	A ↔ (HL+C)			
16-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOVW</b>	rp,#word	3	12	–	rp ← word			
		saddrp,#word	4	16	20	(saddrp) ← word			
		sfrp,#word	4	–	20	sfrp ← word			
		AX,saddrp	2	12	16	AX ← (saddrp)			
		saddrp,AX	2	12	16	(saddrp) ← AX			
		AX,sfrp	2	–	16	AX ← sfrp			
		sfrp,AX	2	–	16	sfrp ← AX			
		AX,rp <span style="float:right">Note 4</span>	1	8	–	A X ← r p			
		rp,AX <span style="float:right">Note 4</span>	1	8	–	rp ← AX			
		AX,!addr16	3	20	24+4n	AX ← (addr16)			
		!addr16,AX	3	20	24+4m	(addr16) ← AX			
		<b>XCHW</b>	AX,rp <span style="float:right">Note 4</span>	1	8	–	AX ↔ rp		
	8-Bit Operation	<b>ADD</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	A, CY ← A+byte	x	x
saddr,#byte			3	12	16	(saddr), CY ← (saddr) + byte	x	x	x
A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>			2	8	–	A,CY ← A+r	x	x	x
r,A			2	8	–	r,CY ← r+A	x	x	x
A,saddr			2	8	10	A,CY ← A+(saddr)	x	x	x
A,!addr16			3	16	18+2n	A,CY ← A+(addr16)	x	x	x
A,[HL]			1	8	10+2n	A,CY ← A+(HL)	x	x	x
A,[HL+byte]			2	16	18+2n	A,CY ← A+(HL+byte)	x	x	x
A,[HL+B]			2	16	18+2n	A, CY ← A+(HL+B)	x	x	x
A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	A,CY ← A+(HL+C)	x	x	x		

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.
  4. Only when rp = BC, DE or HL.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>ADDC</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A+byte+CY$	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	$(saddr), CY \leftarrow (saddr)+byte+CY$	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	2	8	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A+r+CY$	x	x	x
		r,A	2	8	–	$r,CY \leftarrow r+A+CY$	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(saddr)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(addr16)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL+byte)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL+B)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL+C)+CY$	x	x	x
	<b>SUB</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-byte$	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	$(saddr),CY \leftarrow (saddr)-byte$	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	2	8	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-r$	x	x	x
		r,A	2	8	–	$r,CY \leftarrow r-A$	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(saddr)$	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(addr16)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+byte)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+B)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+C)$	x	x	x
	<b>SUBC</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-byte-CY$	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	$(saddr),CY \leftarrow (saddr)-byte-CY$	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	2	8	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-r-CY$	x	x	x
		r,A	2	8	–	$r,CY \leftarrow r-A-CY$	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(saddr)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(addr16)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+byte)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+B)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+C)-CY$	x	x	x

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag	
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>AND</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	$A \leftarrow A \wedge \text{byte}$		×
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \wedge \text{byte}$		×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	8	–	$A \leftarrow A \wedge r$		×
		r,A	2	8	–	$r \leftarrow r \wedge A$		×
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{saddr})$		×
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{addr}16)$		×
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL})$		×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		×
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL}+B)$		×
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL}+C)$		×
	<b>OR</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$		×
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$		×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	8	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$		×
		r,A	2	8	–	$r \leftarrow r \vee A$		×
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$		×
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr}16)$		×
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$		×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		×
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+B)$		×
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+C)$		×
	<b>XOR</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	$A \leftarrow A \oplus \text{byte}$		×
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \oplus \text{byte}$		×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	8	–	$A \leftarrow A \oplus r$		×
		r,A	2	8	–	$r \leftarrow r \oplus A$		×
		A,saddr	2	8	10	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{saddr})$		×
		A,!addr16	3	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{addr}16)$		×
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL})$		×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		×
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL}+B)$		×
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL}+C)$		×

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except  $r = A$ .

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>CMP</b>	A,#byte	2	8	–	A–byte	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	12	16	(saddr)–byte	×	×	×
		A,r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	8	–	A–r	×	×	×
		r,A	2	8	–	r–A	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	8	10	A–(saddr)	×	×	×
		A,laddr16	3	16	18+2n	A–(addr16)	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	8	10+2n	A–(HL)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	16	18+2n	A–(HL+byte)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	16	18+2n	A–(HL+B)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	16	18+2n	A–(HL+C)	×	×	×
16-Bit Operation	<b>ADDW</b>	AX,#word	3	12	–	AX,CY ← AX+word	×	×	×
	<b>SUBW</b>	AX,#word	3	12	–	AX,CY ← AX–word	×	×	×
	<b>CMPW</b>	AX,#word	3	12	–	AX–word	×	×	×
Multiply/divide	<b>MULU</b> <sup>Note 4</sup>	X	2	32	–	AX ← A×X			
	<b>DIVUW</b> <sup>Note 4</sup>	C	2	50	–	AX (quotient), C (remainder) ← AX ÷ C			
Increment/decrement	<b>INC</b>	r	1	4	–	r ← r+1	×	×	
		saddr	2	8	12	(saddr) ← (saddr)+1	×	×	
	<b>DEC</b>	r	1	4	–	r ← r–1	×	×	
		saddr	2	8	12	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1	×	×	
	<b>INCW</b>	rp	1	8	–	rp ← rp+1			
	<b>DECW</b>	rp	1	8	–	rp ← rp–1			
Rotate	<b>ROR</b>	A,1	1	4	–	(CY, A <sub>7</sub> ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> )×1			×
	<b>ROL</b>	A,1	1	4	–	(CY, A <sub>0</sub> ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> )×1			×
	<b>RORC</b>	A,1	1	4	–	(CY ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> )×1			×
	<b>ROLC</b>	A,1	1	4	–	(CY ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>0</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> )×1			×
	<b>ROR4</b>	[HL]	2	20	24+2n+2m	A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub>			
	<b>ROL4</b>	[HL]	2	20	24+2n+2m	A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub>			
BCD Adjust	<b>ADJBA</b>		2	8	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Addition	×	×	×
	<b>ADJBS</b>		2	8	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Subtract	×	×	×

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.
  4. The  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y Subseries have no MULU/DIVUW instructions.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Bit Manipulation	<b>MOV1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	12	14	$CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	8	–	$CY \leftarrow \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	12	14+2n	$CY \leftarrow (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
		saddr.bit,CY	3	12	16	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow CY$			
		sfr.bit,CY	3	–	16	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow CY$			
		A.bit,CY	2	8	–	$\text{A.bit} \leftarrow CY$			
		PSW.bit,CY	3	–	16	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow CY$		×	×
		[HL].bit,CY	2	12	16+2n+2m	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow CY$			
	<b>AND1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	12	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	8	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	12	14+2n	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
	<b>OR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	12	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	8	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	12	14+2n	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
	<b>XOR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	12	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	8	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	14	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	12	14+2n	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
	<b>SET1</b>	saddr.bit	2	8	12	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow 1$			
		sfr.bit	3	–	16	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow 1$			
		A.bit	2	8	–	$\text{A.bit} \leftarrow 1$			
		PSW.bit	2	–	12	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow 1$		×	×
		[HL].bit	2	12	16+2n+2m	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow 1$			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Bit Manipulation	<b>CLR1</b>	saddr.bit	2	8	12	(saddr.bit) ← 0			
		sfr.bit	3	–	16	sfr.bit ← 0			
		A.bit	2	8	–	A.bit ← 0			
		PSW.bit	2	–	12	PSW.bit ← 0	×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	12	16+2n+2m	(HL).bit ← 0			
	<b>SET1</b>	CY	1	4	–	CY ← 1			1
	<b>CLR1</b>	CY	1	4	–	CY ← 0			0
	<b>NOT1</b>	CY	1	4	–	CY ← $\overline{\text{CY}}$			×
Call Return	<b>CALL</b>	!addr16	3	14	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+3) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+3) <sub>L</sub> , PC ← addr16, SP ← SP–2			
	<b>CALLF</b>	!addr11	2	10	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>15–11</sub> ← 00001, PC <sub>10–0</sub> ← addr11, SP ← SP–2			
	<b>CALLT</b>	[addr5]	1	12	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (00000000, addr5+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (00000000, addr5), SP ← SP–2			
	<b>BRK</b>		1	12	–	(SP–1) ← PSW, (SP–2) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–3) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (003FH), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (003EH), SP ← SP–3, IE ← 0			
	<b>RET</b>		1	12	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>RETI</b>		1	12	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3, NMIS ← 0	R	R	R
	<b>RETB</b>		1	12	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3	R	R	R
Stack Manipulation	<b>PUSH</b>	PSW	1	4	–	(SP–1) ← PSW, SP ← SP–1			
		rp	1	8	–	(SP–1) ← rp <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← rp <sub>L</sub> , SP ← SP–2			
	<b>POP</b>	PSW	1	4	–	PSW ← (SP), SP ← SP+1	R	R	R
		rp	1	8	–	rp <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), rp <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>MOVW</b>	SP,#word	4	–	20	SP ← word			
		SP, AX	2	–	16	SP ← AX			
AX, SP		2	–	16	AX ← SP				
Unconditional Branch	<b>BR</b>	!addr16	3	12	–	PC ← addr16			
		\$addr16	2	12	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8			
		AX	2	16	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← A, PC <sub>L</sub> ← X			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
Conditional Branch	<b>BC</b>	\$addr16	2	12	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY=1				
	<b>BNC</b>	\$addr16	2	12	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY=0				
	<b>BZ</b>	\$addr16	2	12	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z=1				
	<b>BNZ</b>	\$addr16	2	12	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z=0				
	<b>BT</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	3	16	18		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=1			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	22		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=1			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	16	–		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=1			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	3	–	18		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=1			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	20	22+2n		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=1			
	<b>BF</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	20	22		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=0			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	22		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=0			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	16	–		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=0			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	22		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=0			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	20	22+2n		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=0			
	<b>BTCLR</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	20	24		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=1 then reset (saddr.bit)			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	24		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=1 then reset sfr.bit			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	16	–		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=1 then reset A.bit			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	24		PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=1 then reset PSW.bit	×	×	×
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	20	24+2n+2m		PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=1 then reset (HL).bit			
	<b>DBNZ</b>	B,\$addr16	2	12	–		B ← B–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if B≠0			
		C,\$addr16	2	12	–		C ← C–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if C≠0			
		saddr,\$addr16	3	16	20		(saddr) ← (saddr)–1, then PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr)≠0			
	CPU Control	<b>SEL</b>	Rbn	2	8	–	RBS1,0 ← n			
<b>NOP</b>			1	4	–	No Operation				
<b>EI</b>			2	–	12	IE ← 1 (Enable Interrupt)				
<b>DI</b>			2	–	12	IE ← 0 (Disable Interrupt)				
<b>HALT</b>			2	12	–	Set HALT Mode				
<b>STOP</b>			2	12	–	Set STOP Mode				

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.



★ (2)  $\mu$ PD78044F/78044H/78064/78064Y/78064B/780208/780228 Subseries

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOV</b>	r,#byte	2	4	–	r ← byte				
		saddr,#byte	3	6	7	(saddr) ← byte				
		sfr,#byte	3	–	7	sfr ← byte				
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	1	2	–	A ← r				
		r,A <small>Note 3</small>	1	2	–	r ← A				
		A,saddr	2	4	5	A ← (saddr)				
		saddr,A	2	4	5	(saddr) ← A				
		A,sfr	2	–	5	A ← sfr				
		sfr,A	2	–	5	sfr ← A				
		A,laddr16	3	8	9	A ← (addr16)				
		laddr16,A	3	8	9	(addr16) ← A				
		PSW,#byte	3	–	7	PSW ← byte		x	x	x
		A,PSW	2	–	5	A ← PSW				
		PSW,A	2	–	5	PSW ← A		x	x	x
		A,[DE]	1	4	5	A ← (DE)				
		[DE],A	1	4	5	(DE) ← A				
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	A ← (HL)				
		[HL],A	1	4	5	(HL) ← A				
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	A ← (HL+byte)				
		[HL+byte],A	2	8	9	(HL+byte) ← A				
	A,[HL+B]	1	6	7	A ← (HL+B)					
	[HL+B],A	1	6	7	(HL+B) ← A					
	A,[HL+C]	1	6	7	A ← (HL+C)					
	[HL+C],A	1	6	7	(HL+C) ← A					
	<b>XCH</b>	<small>Note 3</small>	A,r	1	2	–	A ↔ r			
			A,saddr	2	4	6	A ↔ (saddr)			
			A,sfr	2	–	6	A ↔ (sfr)			
			A,laddr16	3	8	10	A ↔ (addr16)			
			A,[DE]	1	4	6	A ↔ (DE)			
			A,[HL]	1	4	6	A ↔ (HL)			
			A,[HL+byte]	2	8	10	A ↔ (HL+byte)			
			A,[HL+B]	2	8	10	A ↔ (HL+B)			
A,[HL+C]	2	8	10	A ↔ (HL+C)						

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
16-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOVW</b>	rp,#word	3	6	–	rp ← word			
		saddrp,#word	4	8	10	(saddrp) ← word			
		sfrp,#word	4	–	10	sfrp ← word			
		AX,saddrp	2	6	8	AX ← (saddrp)			
		saddrp,AX	2	6	8	(saddrp) ← AX			
		AX,sfrp	2	–	8	AX ← sfrp			
		sfrp,AX	2	–	8	sfrp ← AX			
		AX,rp <small>Note 3</small>	1	4	–	AX ← rp			
		rp,AX <small>Note 3</small>	1	4	–	rp ← AX			
		AX,!addr16	3	10	12	AX ← (addr16)			
	!addr16,AX	3	10	12	(addr16) ← AX				
<b>XCHW</b>	AX,rp <small>Note 3</small>	1	4	–	AX ↔ rp				
8-Bit Operation	<b>ADD</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	A,CY ← A+byte	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	(saddr),CY ← (saddr)+byte	x	x	x
		A,r <small>Note 4</small>	2	4	–	A,CY ← A+r	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	r,CY ← r+A	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	A,CY ← A+(saddr)	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	A,CY ← A+(addr16)	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	A,CY ← A+(HL)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	A,CY ← A+(HL+byte)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	A,CY ← A+(HL+B)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	A,CY ← A+(HL+C)	x	x	x
	<b>ADDC</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	A,CY ← A+byte+CY	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	(saddr),CY ← (saddr)+byte+CY	x	x	x
		A,r <small>Note 4</small>	2	4	–	A,CY ← A+r+CY	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	r,CY ← r+A+CY	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	A,CY ← A+(saddr)+CY	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	A,CY ← A+(addr16)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	A,CY ← A+(HL)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	A,CY ← A+(HL+byte)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	A,CY ← A+(HL+B)+CY	x	x	x
A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	A,CY ← A+(HL+C)+CY	x	x	x		

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Only when rp = BC, DE or HL.
  4. Except r = A.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>SUB</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A, CY \leftarrow A - \text{byte}$	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}), CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) - \text{byte}$	×	×	×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	$A, CY \leftarrow A - r$	×	×	×
		r,A	2	4	–	$r, CY \leftarrow r - A$	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{saddr})$	×	×	×
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{addr16})$	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL})$	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL} + B)$	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL} + C)$	×	×	×
	<b>SUBC</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A, CY \leftarrow A - \text{byte} - CY$	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}), CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) - \text{byte} - CY$	×	×	×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	$A, CY \leftarrow A - r - CY$	×	×	×
		r,A	2	4	–	$r, CY \leftarrow r - A - CY$	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{saddr}) - CY$	×	×	×
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{addr16}) - CY$	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL}) - CY$	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL} + \text{byte}) - CY$	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL} + B) - CY$	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	$A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{HL} + C) - CY$	×	×	×
	<b>AND</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \wedge \text{byte}$	×		
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \wedge \text{byte}$	×		
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \wedge r$	×		
		r,A	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow r \wedge A$	×		
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{saddr})$	×		
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{addr16})$	×		
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL})$	×		
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$	×		
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL} + B)$	×		
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL} + C)$	×		

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except  $r = A$ .

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>OR</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$		x	
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$		x	
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$		x	
		r,A	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow r \vee A$		x	
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$		x	
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr16})$		x	
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$		x	
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		x	
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+\text{B})$		x	
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+\text{C})$		x	
	<b>XOR</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \nabla \text{byte}$		x	
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \nabla \text{byte}$		x	
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \nabla r$		x	
		r,A	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow r \nabla A$		x	
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{saddr})$		x	
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{addr16})$		x	
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL})$		x	
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		x	
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+\text{B})$		x	
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+\text{C})$		x	
	<b>CMP</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	A–byte	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	(saddr)–byte	x	x	x
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	A–r	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	r–A	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	A–(saddr)	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9	A–(addr16)	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5	A–(HL)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9	A–(HL+byte)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9	A–(HL+B)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9	A–(HL+C)	x	x	x

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
16-Bit Operation	<b>ADDW</b>	AX,#word	3	6	–	AX,CY ← AX+word	×	×	×	
	<b>SUBW</b>	AX,#word	3	6	–	AX,CY ← AX–word	×	×	×	
	<b>CMPW</b>	AX,#word	3	6	–	AX–word	×	×	×	
Multiply/divide	<b>MULU</b>	X	2	16	–	AX ← A × X				
	<b>DIVUW</b>	C	2	25	–	AX (quotient), C (remainder) ← AX ÷ C				
Increment/decrement	<b>INC</b>	r	1	2	–	r ← r+1	×	×		
		saddr	2	4	6	(saddr) ← (saddr)+1	×	×		
	<b>DEC</b>	r	1	2	–	r ← r–1	×	×		
		saddr	2	4	6	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1	×	×		
	<b>INCW</b>	rp	1	4	–	rp ← rp+1				
	<b>DECW</b>	rp	1	4	–	rp ← rp–1				
Rotate	<b>ROR</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY,A7 ← A0, Am–1 ← Am) × 1			×	
	<b>ROL</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY,A0 ← A7, Am+1 ← Am) × 1			×	
	<b>RORC</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY ← A0, A7 ← CY, Am–1 ← Am) × 1			×	
	<b>ROLC</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY ← A7, A0 ← CY, Am+1 ← Am) × 1			×	
	<b>ROR4</b>	[HL]	2	10	12	A3–0 ← (HL)3–0, (HL)7–4 ← A3–0, (HL)3–0 ← (HL)7–4				
	<b>ROL4</b>	[HL]	2	10	12	A3–0 ← (HL)7–4, (HL)3–0 ← A3–0, (HL)7–4 ← (HL)3–0				
BCD Adjust	<b>ADJBA</b>		2	4	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Addition	×	×	×	
	<b>ADJBS</b>		2	4	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Subtract	×	×	×	
Bit Manipulation	<b>MOV1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	CY ← (saddr.bit)			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	CY ← sfr.bit			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	CY ← A.bit			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	CY ← PSW.bit			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7	CY ← (HL).bit			×	
		saddr.bit,CY	3	6	8	(saddr.bit) ← CY				
		sfr.bit,CY	3	–	8	sfr.bit ← CY				
		A.bit,CY	2	4	–	A.bit ← CY				
		PSW.bit,CY	3	–	8	PSW.bit ← CY			×	×
		[HL].bit,CY	2	6	8	(HL).bit ← CY				

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
Bit Manipulation	<b>AND1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{saddr.bit})$			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{sfr.bit}$			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge A.\text{bit}$			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{PSW.bit}$			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×	
	<b>OR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{saddr.bit})$			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{sfr.bit}$			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee A.\text{bit}$			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{PSW.bit}$			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×	
	<b>XOR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla (\text{saddr.bit})$			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla \text{sfr.bit}$			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla A.\text{bit}$			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla \text{PSW.bit}$			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×	
	<b>SET1</b>	saddr.bit	2	4	6	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow 1$				
		sfr.bit	3	–	8	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow 1$				
		A.bit	2	4	–	$A.\text{bit} \leftarrow 1$				
		PSW.bit	2	–	6	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow 1$		×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	6	8	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow 1$				
	<b>CLR1</b>	saddr.bit	2	4	6	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow 0$				
		sfr.bit	3	–	8	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow 0$				
		A.bit	2	4	–	$A.\text{bit} \leftarrow 0$				
		PSW.bit	2	–	6	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow 0$		×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	6	8	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow 0$				
	<b>SET1</b>	CY	1	2	–	$CY \leftarrow 1$			1	
	<b>CLR1</b>	CY	1	2	–	$CY \leftarrow 0$			0	
	<b>NOT1</b>	CY	1	2	–	$CY \leftarrow \overline{CY}$			×	

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Call Return	<b>CALL</b>	!addr16	3	7	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+3) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+3) <sub>L</sub> , PC ← addr16, SP ← SP–2			
	<b>CALLF</b>	!addr11	2	5	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>15–11</sub> ← 00001, PC <sub>10–0</sub> ← addr11, SP ← SP–2			
	<b>CALLT</b>	[addr5]	1	6	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (00000000,addr5+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (00000000,addr5), SP ← SP–2			
	<b>BRK</b>		1	6	–	(SP–1) ← PSW, (SP–2) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–3) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (003FH), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (003EH), SP ← SP–3, IE ← 0			
	<b>RET</b>		1	6	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>RETI</b>		1	6	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3, NMIS ← 0	R	R	R
	<b>RETB</b>		1	6	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3	R	R	R
Stack Manipulation	<b>PUSH</b>	PSW	1	2	–	(SP–1) ← PSW, SP ← SP–1			
		rp	1	4	–	(SP–1) ← rp <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← rp <sub>L</sub> , SP ← SP–2			
	<b>POP</b>	PSW	1	2	–	PSW ← (SP), SP ← SP+1	R	R	R
		rp	1	4	–	rp <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), rp <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>MOVW</b>	SP,#word	4	–	10	SP ← word			
		SP, AX	2	–	8	SP ← AX			
AX, SP		2	–	8	AX ← SP				
Unconditional Branch	<b>BR</b>	!addr16	3	6	–	PC ← addr16			
		\$addr16	2	6	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8			
		AX	2	8	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← A, PC <sub>L</sub> ← X			
Conditional Branch	<b>BC</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY = 1			
	<b>BNC</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY = 0			
	<b>BZ</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z = 1			
	<b>BNZ</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z = 0			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Conditional Branch	<b>BT</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	3	8	9	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit) = 1			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 1			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit = 1			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	3	–	9	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 1			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10	11	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 1			
	<b>BF</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	10	11	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit) = 0			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 0			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit = 0			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 0			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10	11	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 0			
	<b>BTCLR</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	10	12	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit) = 1 then reset (saddr.bit)			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	12	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 1 then reset sfr.bit			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit = 1 then reset A.bit			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	12	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 1 then reset PSW.bit	×	×	×
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10	12	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 1 then reset (HL).bit			
	<b>DBNZ</b>	B,\$addr16	2	6	–	B ← B–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if B ≠ 0			
		C,\$addr16	2	6	–	C ← C–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if C ≠ 0			
		saddr,\$addr16	3	8	10	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1, then PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr) ≠ 0			
CPU Control	<b>SEL</b>	RBn	2	4	–	RBS1, 0 ← n			
	<b>NOP</b>		1	2	–	No Operation			
	<b>EI</b>		2	–	6	IE ← 1 (Enable Interrupt)			
	<b>DI</b>		2	–	6	IE ← 0 (Disable Interrupt)			
	<b>HALT</b>		2	6	–	Set HALT Mode			
	<b>STOP</b>		2	6	–	Set STOP Mode			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

**Remark** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).



- ★ (3)  $\mu$ PD78054, 78054Y, 78058F, 78058FY, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078, 78078Y, 78083, 78098, 78098B, 780018Y, 780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y, 780058, 780058Y, 780308, 780308Y, 780924, 780964 Subseries

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOV</b>	r,#byte	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		saddr,#byte	3	6	7	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		sfr,#byte	3	–	7	$\text{sfr} \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	1	2	–	$A \leftarrow r$				
		r,A <small>Note 3</small>	1	2	–	$r \leftarrow A$				
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow (\text{saddr})$				
		saddr,A	2	4	5	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,sfr	2	–	5	$A \leftarrow \text{sfr}$				
		sfr,A	2	–	5	$\text{sfr} \leftarrow A$				
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow (\text{addr16})$				
		!addr16,A	3	8	9+m	$(\text{addr16}) \leftarrow A$				
		PSW,#byte	3	–	7	$\text{PSW} \leftarrow \text{byte}$		x	x	x
		A,PSW	2	–	5	$A \leftarrow \text{PSW}$				
		PSW,A	2	–	5	$\text{PSW} \leftarrow A$		x	x	x
		A,[DE]	1	4	5+n	$A \leftarrow (\text{DE})$				
		[DE],A	1	4	5+m	$(\text{DE}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL})$				
		[HL],A	1	4	5+m	$(\text{HL}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$				
		[HL+byte],A	2	8	9+m	$(\text{HL}+\text{byte}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+B]	1	6	7+n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{B})$				
		[HL+B],A	1	6	7+m	$(\text{HL}+\text{B}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+C]	1	6	7+n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{C})$				
[HL+C],A	1	6	7+m	$(\text{HL}+\text{C}) \leftarrow A$						

- Notes** 1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.  
 2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.  
 3. Except r = A.

- Remarks** 1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
 2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.  
 3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.  
 4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

**CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET**

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>XCH</b>	A,r <span style="float: right;">Note 4</span>	1	2	–	A ↔ r			
		A,saddr	2	4	6	A ↔ (saddr)			
		A,sfr	2	–	6	A ↔ sfr			
		A,!addr16	3	8	10+n+m	A ↔ (addr16)			
		A,[DE]	1	4	6+n+m	A ↔ (DE)			
		A,[HL]	1	4	6+n+m	A ↔ (HL)			
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	10+n+m	A ↔ (HL+byte)			
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	10+n+m	A ↔ (HL+B)			
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	10+n+m	A ↔ (HL+C)			
16-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOVW</b>	rp,#word	3	6	–	rp ← word			
		saddrp,#word	4	8	10	(saddrp) ← word			
		sfrp,#word	4	–	10	sfrp ← word			
		AX,saddrp	2	6	8	AX ← (saddrp)			
		saddrp,AX	2	6	8	(saddrp) ← AX			
		AX,sfrp	2	–	8	AX ← sfrp			
		sfrp,AX	2	–	8	sfrp ← AX			
		AX,rp <span style="float: right;">Note 3</span>	1	4	–	AX ← rp			
		rp,AX <span style="float: right;">Note 3</span>	1	4	–	rp ← AX			
		AX,!addr16	3	10	12+2n	AX ← (addr16)			
		!addr16,AX	3	10	12+2m	(addr16) ← AX			
	<b>XCHW</b>	AX,rp <span style="float: right;">Note 3</span>	1	4	–	AX ↔ rp			
8-Bit Operation	<b>ADD</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	A,CY ← A+byte	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	(saddr), CY ← (saddr)+byte	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float: right;">Note 4</span>	2	4	–	A,CY ← A+r	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	r,CY ← r+A	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	A,CY ← A+(saddr)	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	A,CY ← A+(addr16)	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	A,CY ← A+(HL)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	A,CY ← A+(HL+byte)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	A,CY ← A+(HL+B)	x	x	x
A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	A,CY ← A+(HL+C)	x	x	x		

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Only when rp = BC, DE or HL.
  4. Except r = A.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>ADDC</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A+byte+CY$	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(saddr),CY \leftarrow (saddr)+byte+CY$	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	2	4	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A+r+CY$	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	$r,CY \leftarrow r+A+CY$	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(saddr)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(addr16)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL+byte)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL+B)+CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A+(HL+C)+CY$	x	x	x
	<b>SUB</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-byte$	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(saddr),CY \leftarrow (saddr)-byte$	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	2	4	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-r$	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	$r,CY \leftarrow r-A$	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(saddr)$	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(addr16)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+byte)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+B)$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+C)$	x	x	x
	<b>SUBC</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-byte-CY$	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(saddr),CY \leftarrow (saddr)-byte-CY$	x	x	x
		A,r <span style="float:right">Note 3</span>	2	4	–	$A,CY \leftarrow A-r-CY$	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4	–	$r,CY \leftarrow r-A-CY$	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(saddr)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(addr16)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+byte)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+B)-CY$	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	$A,CY \leftarrow A-(HL+C)-CY$	x	x	x

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC CY	
8-Bit Operation	<b>AND</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \wedge \text{byte}$		×	
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \wedge \text{byte}$		×	
		A,r	Note 3	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \wedge r$		×
		r,A	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow r \wedge A$		×	
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{saddr})$		×	
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{addr16})$		×	
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL})$		×	
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		×	
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL}+B)$		×	
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL}+C)$		×	
	<b>OR</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$		×	
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$		×	
		A,r	Note 3	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$		×
		r,A	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow r \vee A$		×	
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$		×	
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr16})$		×	
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$		×	
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		×	
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+B)$		×	
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+C)$		×	
	<b>XOR</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \nabla \text{byte}$		×	
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \nabla \text{byte}$		×	
		A,r	Note 3	2	4	–	$A \leftarrow A \nabla r$		×
		r,A	2	4	–	$r \leftarrow r \nabla A$		×	
		A,saddr	2	4	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{saddr})$		×	
		A,!addr16	3	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{addr16})$		×	
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL})$		×	
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$		×	
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+B)$		×	
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+C)$		×	

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except  $r = A$ .

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>CMP</b>	A,#byte	2	4	–	A–byte	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	6	8	(saddr)–byte	×	×	×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4	–	A–r	×	×	×
		r,A	2	4	–	r–A	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	4	5	A–(saddr)	×	×	×
		A,laddr16	3	8	9+n	A–(addr16)	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	4	5+n	A–(HL)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8	9+n	A–(HL+byte)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	8	9+n	A–(HL+B)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	8	9+n	A–(HL+C)	×	×	×
16-Bit Operation	<b>ADDW</b>	AX,#word	3	6	–	AX,CY ← AX+word	×	×	×
	<b>SUBW</b>	AX,#word	3	6	–	AX,CY ← AX–word	×	×	×
	<b>CMPW</b>	AX,#word	3	6	–	AX–word	×	×	×
Multiply/divide	<b>MULU</b>	X	2	16	–	AX ← A × X			
	<b>DIVUW</b>	C	2	25	–	AX (quotient), C (remainder) ← AX ÷ C			
Increment/decrement	<b>INC</b>	r	1	2	–	r ← r+1	×	×	
		saddr	2	4	6	(saddr) ← (saddr)+1	×	×	
	<b>DEC</b>	r	1	2	–	r ← r–1	×	×	
		saddr	2	4	6	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1	×	×	
	<b>INCW</b>	rp	1	4	–	rp ← rp+1			
	<b>DECW</b>	rp	1	4	–	rp ← rp–1			
Rotate	<b>ROR</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY, A <sub>7</sub> ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>ROL</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY, A <sub>0</sub> ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>RORC</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>ROLC</b>	A,1	1	2	–	(CY ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>0</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>ROR4</b>	[HL]	2	10	12+n+m	A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub>			
	<b>ROL4</b>	[HL]	2	10	12+n+m	A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub>			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
BCD	<b>ADJBA</b>		2	4	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Addition	×	×	×
Adjust	<b>ADJBS</b>		2	4	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Subtract	×	×	×
Bit Manipulation	<b>MOV1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7+n	$CY \leftarrow (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
		saddr.bit,CY	3	6	8	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow CY$			
		sfr.bit,CY	3	–	8	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow CY$			
		A.bit,CY	2	4	–	$\text{A.bit} \leftarrow CY$			
		PSW.bit,CY	3	–	8	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow CY$			×
		[HL].bit,CY	2	6	8+n+m	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow CY$			
	<b>AND1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7+n	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
	<b>OR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7+n	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×
	<b>XOR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus (\text{saddr.bit})$			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus \text{sfr.bit}$			×
		CY,A.bit	2	4	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus \text{A.bit}$			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus \text{PSW.bit}$			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6	7+n	$CY \leftarrow CY \oplus (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Bit Manipulation	<b>SET1</b>	saddr.bit	2	4	6	(saddr.bit) ← 1			
		sfr.bit	3	–	8	sfr.bit ← 1			
		A.bit	2	4	–	A.bit ← 1			
		PSW.bit	2	–	6	PSW.bit ← 1	×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	6	8+n+m	(HL).bit ← 1			
	<b>CLR1</b>	saddr.bit	2	4	6	(saddr.bit) ← 0			
		sfr.bit	3	–	8	sfr.bit ← 0			
		A.bit	2	4	–	A.bit ← 0			
		PSW.bit	2	–	6	PSW.bit ← 0	×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	6	8+n+m	(HL).bit ← 0			
	<b>SET1</b>	CY	1	2	–	CY ← 1			1
	<b>CLR1</b>	CY	1	2	–	CY ← 0			0
	<b>NOT1</b>	CY	1	2	–	CY ← CY			×
Call Return	<b>CALL</b>	!addr16	3	7	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+3) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+3) <sub>L</sub> , PC ← addr16, SP ← SP–2			
	<b>CALLF</b>	!addr11	2	5	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>15–11</sub> ← 00001, PC <sub>10–0</sub> ← addr11, SP ← SP–2			
	<b>CALLT</b>	[addr5]	1	6	–	(SP–1) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–2) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (00000000, addr5+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (00000000, addr5), SP ← SP–2			
	<b>BRK</b>		1	6	–	(SP–1) ← PSW, (SP–2) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP–3) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (003FH), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (003EH), SP ← SP–3, IE ← 0			
	<b>RET</b>		1	6	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>RETI</b>		1	6	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3, NMIS ← 0	R	R	R
	<b>RETB</b>		1	6	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3	R	R	R

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
Stack Manipulation	<b>PUSH</b>	PSW	1	2	–	$(SP-1) \leftarrow PSW, SP \leftarrow SP-1$				
		rp	1	4	–	$(SP-1) \leftarrow rp_H, (SP-2) \leftarrow rp_L, SP \leftarrow SP-2$				
	<b>POP</b>	PSW	1	2	–	$PSW \leftarrow (SP), SP \leftarrow SP+1$	R	R	R	
		rp	1	4	–	$rp_H \leftarrow (SP+1), rp_L \leftarrow (SP), SP \leftarrow SP+2$				
	<b>MOVW</b>	SP,#word	4	–	10	$SP \leftarrow word$				
		SP,AX	2	–	8	$SP \leftarrow AX$				
AX,SP		2	–	8	$AX \leftarrow SP$					
Unconditional Branch	<b>BR</b>	!addr16	3	6	–	$PC \leftarrow addr16$				
		\$addr16	2	6	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+2+jdisp8$				
		AX	2	8	–	$PC_H \leftarrow A, PC_L \leftarrow X$				
Conditional Branch	<b>BC</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+2+jdisp8$ if CY=1				
		<b>BNC</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+2+jdisp8$ if CY=0			
		<b>BZ</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+2+jdisp8$ if Z=1			
		<b>BNZ</b>	\$addr16	2	6	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+2+jdisp8$ if Z=0			
	<b>BT</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	3	8	9	$PC \leftarrow PC+3+jdisp8$ if (saddr.bit)=1				
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11	$PC \leftarrow PC+4+jdisp8$ if sfr.bit=1				
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+3+jdisp8$ if A.bit=1				
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	3	–	9	$PC \leftarrow PC+3+jdisp8$ if PSW.bit=1				
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10	11+n	$PC \leftarrow PC+3+jdisp8$ if (HL).bit=1				
	<b>BF</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	10	11	$PC \leftarrow PC+4+jdisp8$ if (saddr.bit)=0				
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11	$PC \leftarrow PC+4+jdisp8$ if sfr.bit=0				
A.bit,\$addr16		3	8	–	$PC \leftarrow PC+3+jdisp8$ if A.bit=0					
PSW.bit,\$addr16		4	–	11	$PC \leftarrow PC+4+jdisp8$ if PSW.bit=0					
[HL].bit,\$addr16		3	10	11+n	$PC \leftarrow PC+3+jdisp8$ if (HL).bit=0					

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.



Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Conditional Branch	<b>BTCLR</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	10	12	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=1 then reset (saddr.bit)			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	12	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=1 then reset sfr.bit			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=1 then reset A.bit			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	12	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=1 then reset PSW.bit			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10	12+n+m	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=1 then reset (HL).bit			
	<b>DBNZ</b>	B,\$addr16	2	6	–	B ← B–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if B≠0			
		C,\$addr16	2	6	–	C ← C–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if C≠0			
		saddr,\$addr16	3	8	10	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1, then PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr)≠0			
CPU	<b>SEL</b>	RBn	2	4	–	RBS1,0 ← n	x	x	x
Control	<b>NOP</b>		1	2	–	No Operation			
	<b>EI</b>		2	–	6	IE ← 1 (Enable Interrupt)			
	<b>DI</b>		2	–	6	IE ← 0 (Disable Interrupt)			
	<b>HALT</b>		2	6	–	Set HALT Mode			
	<b>STOP</b>		2	6	–	Set STOP Mode			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. Number of clock cycles is when there is a program in the internal ROM area.
  3. n indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is read.
  4. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

★ (4)  $\mu$ PD78070A, 78070AY

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOV</b>	r,#byte	2	4+2n	–	$r \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	7+3n	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		sfr,#byte	3	–	7+3n	$\text{sfr} \leftarrow \text{byte}$				
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	1	2+n	–	$A \leftarrow r$				
		r,A <small>Note 3</small>	1	2+n	–	$r \leftarrow A$				
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{saddr})$				
		saddr,A	2	4+2n	5+2n	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,sfr	2	–	5+2n	$A \leftarrow \text{sfr}$				
		sfr,A	2	–	5+2n	$\text{sfr} \leftarrow A$				
		A,laddr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	$A \leftarrow (\text{addr16})$				
		laddr16,A	3	8+3n	9+3n+m	$(\text{addr16}) \leftarrow A$				
		PSW,#byte	3	–	7+3n	$\text{PSW} \leftarrow \text{byte}$		x	x	x
		A,PSW	2	–	5+2n	$A \leftarrow \text{PSW}$				
		PSW,A	2	–	5+2n	$\text{PSW} \leftarrow A$		x	x	x
		A,[DE]	1	4+n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{DE})$				
		[DE],A	1	4+n	5+n+m	$(\text{DE}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL})$				
		[HL],A	1	4+n	5+n+m	$(\text{HL}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$				
		[HL+byte],A	2	8+2n	9+2n+m	$(\text{HL}+\text{byte}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+B]	1	6+n	7+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{B})$				
		[HL+B],A	1	6+n	7+n+m	$(\text{HL}+\text{B}) \leftarrow A$				
		A,[HL+C]	1	6+n	7+2n	$A \leftarrow (\text{HL}+\text{C})$				
		[HL+C],A	1	6+n	7+n+m	$(\text{HL}+\text{C}) \leftarrow A$				
	<b>XCH</b>	A,r <small>Note 3</small>	1	2+n	–	$A \leftrightarrow r$				
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	6+2n	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{saddr})$				
		A,sfr	2	–	6+2n	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{sfr})$				
		A,laddr16	3	8+3n	10+4n+m	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{addr16})$				
		A,[DE]	1	4+n	6+2n+m	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{DE})$				
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	6+2n+m	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL})$				
A,[HL+byte]		2	8+2n	10+3n+m	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$					
A,[HL+B]		2	8+2n	10+3n+m	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL}+\text{B})$					
A,[HL+C]		2	8+2n	10+3n+m	$A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL}+\text{C})$					

**Notes 1.** When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.

**2.** When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

**3.** Except  $r = A$ .

**Remarks 1.** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

**2.** n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.

**3.** m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
16-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOVW</b>	rp,#word	3	6+3n	–	rp ← word			
		saddrp,#word	4	8+4n	10+4n	(saddrp) ← word			
		sfrp,#word	4	–	10+4n	sfrp ← word			
		AX,saddrp	2	6+2n	8+2n	AX ← (saddrp)			
		saddrp,AX	2	6+2n	8+2n	(saddrp) ← AX			
		AX,sfrp	2	–	8+2n	AX ← sfrp			
		sfrp,AX	2	–	8+2n	sfrp ← AX			
		AX,rp <small>Note 3</small>	1	4+n	–	AX ← rp			
		rp,AX <small>Note 3</small>	1	4+n	–	rp ← AX			
		AX,!addr16	3	10+3n	12+5n	AX ← (addr16)			
		!addr16,AX	3	10+3n	12+2m+3n	(addr16) ← AX			
	<b>XCHW</b>	AX,rp <small>Note 3</small>	1	4+n	–	AX ↔ rp			
8-Bit Operation	<b>ADD</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A+byte	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr), CY ← (saddr)+byte	x	x	x
		A,r <small>Note 4</small>	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A+r	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	r,CY ← r+A	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	A,CY ← A+(saddr)	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	A,CY ← A+(addr16)	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	A,CY ← A+(HL)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A+(HL+byte)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A+(HL+B)	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A+(HL+C)	x	x	x
	<b>ADDC</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A+byte+CY	x	x	x
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr),CY ← (saddr)+byte+CY	x	x	x
		A,r <small>Note 4</small>	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A+r+CY	x	x	x
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	r,CY ← r+A+CY	x	x	x
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	A,CY ← A+(saddr)+CY	x	x	x
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	A,CY ← A+(addr16)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	A,CY ← A+(HL)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A+(HL+byte)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A+(HL+B)+CY	x	x	x
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A+(HL+C)+CY	x	x	x

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Only when rp = BC, DE, or HL
  4. Except r = A.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.
  3. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>SUB</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A–byte	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr),CY ← (saddr)–byte	×	×	×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A–r	×	×	×
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	r,CY ← r–A	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	A,CY ← A–(saddr)	×	×	×
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	A,CY ← A–(addr16)	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	A,CY ← A–(HL)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A–(HL+byte)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A–(HL+B)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A–(HL+C)	×	×	×
	<b>SUBC</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A–byte–CY	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr),CY ← (saddr)–byte–CY	×	×	×
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4+2n	–	A,CY ← A–r–CY	×	×	×
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	r,CY ← r–A–CY	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	A,CY ← A–(saddr)–CY	×	×	×
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	A,CY ← A–(addr16)–CY	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	A,CY ← A–(HL)–CY	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A–(HL+byte)–CY	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A–(HL+B)–CY	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A,CY ← A–(HL+C)–CY	×	×	×
	<b>AND</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	A ← A ∧ byte	×		
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr) ← (saddr) ∧ byte	×		
		A,r <small>Note 3</small>	2	4+2n	–	A ← A ∧ r	×		
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	r ← r ∧ A	×		
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	A ← A ∧ (saddr)	×		
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	A ← A ∧ (addr16)	×		
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	A ← A ∧ (HL)	×		
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A ← A ∧ (HL+byte)	×		
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A ← A ∧ (HL+B)	×		
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A ← A ∧ (HL+C)	×		

**Notes 1.** When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.

**2.** When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

**3.** Except r = A.

**Remarks 1.** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

**2.** n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
8-Bit Operation	<b>OR</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$	×		
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$	×		
		A,r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	4+2n	–	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$	×		
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	$r \leftarrow r \vee A$	×		
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$	×		
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr16})$	×		
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$	×		
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$	×		
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+B)$	×		
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL}+C)$	×		
	<b>XOR</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	$A \leftarrow A \nabla \text{byte}$	×		
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \nabla \text{byte}$	×		
		A,r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	4+2n	–	$A \leftarrow A \nabla r$	×		
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	$r \leftarrow r \nabla A$	×		
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{saddr})$	×		
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{addr16})$	×		
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL})$	×		
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+\text{byte})$	×		
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+B)$	×		
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{HL}+C)$	×		
	<b>CMP</b>	A,#byte	2	4+2n	–	A–byte	×	×	×
		saddr,#byte	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr)–byte	×	×	×
		A,r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	4+2n	–	A–r	×	×	×
		r,A	2	4+2n	–	r–A	×	×	×
		A,saddr	2	4+2n	5+2n	A–(saddr)	×	×	×
		A,!addr16	3	8+3n	9+4n	A–(addr16)	×	×	×
		A,[HL]	1	4+n	5+2n	A–(HL)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+byte]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A–(HL+byte)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+B]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A–(HL+B)	×	×	×
		A,[HL+C]	2	8+2n	9+3n	A–(HL+C)	×	×	×

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except r = A.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
16-Bit Operation	<b>ADDW</b>	AX,#word	3	6+3n	–	AX,CY ← AX+word	×	×	×
	<b>SUBW</b>	AX,#word	3	6+3n	–	AX,CY ← AX–word	×	×	×
	<b>CMPW</b>	AX,#word	3	6+3n	–	AX–word	×	×	×
Multiply/divide	<b>MULU</b>	X	2	16+2n	–	AX ← A × X			
	<b>DIVUW</b>	C	2	25+2n	–	AX (quotient), C (remainder) ← AX ÷ C			
Increment/decrement	<b>INC</b>	r	1	2+n	–	r ← r+1	×	×	
		saddr	2	4+2n	6+2n	(saddr) ← (saddr)+1	×	×	
	<b>DEC</b>	r	1	2+n	–	r ← r–1	×	×	
		saddr	2	4+2n	6+2n	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1	×	×	
	<b>INCW</b>	rp	1	4+n	–	rp ← rp+1			
	<b>DECW</b>	rp	1	4+n	–	rp ← rp–1			
Rotate	<b>ROR</b>	A,1	1	2+n	–	(CY, A <sub>7</sub> ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>ROL</b>	A,1	1	2+n	–	(CY, A <sub>0</sub> ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>RORC</b>	A,1	1	2+n	–	(CY ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>ROLC</b>	A,1	1	2+n	–	(CY ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>0</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1			×
	<b>ROR4</b>	[HL]	2	10+2n	12+3n+m	A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub>			
	<b>ROL4</b>	[HL]	2	10+2n	12+3n+m	A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub>			
BCD Adjust	<b>ADJBA</b>		2	4+2n	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Addition	×	×	×
	<b>ADJBS</b>		2	4+2n	–	Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Subtract	×	×	×
Bit Manipulation	<b>MOV1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6+3n	7+3n	CY ← (saddr.bit)			×
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7+3n	CY ← sfr.bit			×
		CY,A.bit	2	4+2n	–	CY ← A.bit			×
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7+3n	CY ← PSW.bit			×
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6+2n	7+3n	CY ← (HL).bit			×
		saddr.bit,CY	3	6+3n	8+3n	(saddr.bit) ← CY			
		sfr.bit,CY	3	–	8+3n	sfr.bit ← CY			
		A.bit,CY	2	4+2n	–	A.bit ← CY			
		PSW.bit,CY	3	–	8+3n	PSW.bit ← CY			×
		[HL].bit,CY	2	6+2n	8+3n+m	(HL).bit ← CY			

- Notes 1.** When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.  
**2.** When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks 1.** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle (f<sub>cpu</sub>) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.  
**3.** m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag			
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY	
Bit Manipulation	<b>AND1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6+3n	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{saddr.bit})$			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{sfr.bit}$			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4+2n	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge A.\text{bit}$			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge \text{PSW.bit}$			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6+2n	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×	
	<b>OR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6+3n	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{saddr.bit})$			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{sfr.bit}$			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4+2n	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee A.\text{bit}$			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee \text{PSW.bit}$			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6+2n	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \vee (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×	
	<b>XOR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	3	6+3n	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla (\text{saddr.bit})$			×	
		CY,sfr.bit	3	–	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla \text{sfr.bit}$			×	
		CY,A.bit	2	4+2n	–	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla A.\text{bit}$			×	
		CY,PSW.bit	3	–	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla \text{PSW.bit}$			×	
		CY,[HL].bit	2	6+2n	7+3n	$CY \leftarrow CY \nabla (\text{HL}).\text{bit}$			×	
	<b>SET1</b>	saddr.bit	2	4+2n	6+2n	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow 1$				
		sfr.bit	3	–	8+3n	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow 1$				
		A.bit	2	4+2n	–	$A.\text{bit} \leftarrow 1$				
		PSW.bit	2	–	6+2n	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow 1$		×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	6+2n	8+3n+m	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow 1$				
	<b>CLR1</b>	saddr.bit	2	4+2n	6+2n	$(\text{saddr.bit}) \leftarrow 0$				
		sfr.bit	3	–	8+3n	$\text{sfr.bit} \leftarrow 0$				
		A.bit	2	4+2n	–	$A.\text{bit} \leftarrow 0$				
		PSW.bit	2	–	6+2n	$\text{PSW.bit} \leftarrow 0$		×	×	×
		[HL].bit	2	6+2n	8+3n+m	$(\text{HL}).\text{bit} \leftarrow 0$				
	<b>SET1</b>	CY	1	2+n	–	$CY \leftarrow 1$			1	
	<b>CLR1</b>	CY	1	2+n	–	$CY \leftarrow 0$			0	
	<b>NOT1</b>	CY	1	2+n	–	$CY \leftarrow \overline{CY}$			×	

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.
  3. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Call Return	<b>CALL</b>	!addr16	3	7+3n	–	(SP-1) ← (PC+3) <sub>H</sub> , (SP-2) ← (PC+3) <sub>L</sub> , PC ← addr16, SP ← SP-2			
	<b>CALLF</b>	!addr11	2	5+2n	–	(SP-1) ← (PC+2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP-2) ← (PC+2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>15-11</sub> ← 00001, PC <sub>10-0</sub> ← addr11, SP ← SP-2			
	<b>CALLT</b>	[addr5]	1	6+n	–	(SP-1) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP-2) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (00000000, addr5+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (00000000, addr5), SP ← SP-2			
	<b>BRK</b>		1	6+n	–	(SP-1) ← PSW, (SP-2) ← (PC+1) <sub>H</sub> , (SP-3) ← (PC+1) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>H</sub> ← (003FH), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (003EH), SP ← SP-3, IE ← 0			
	<b>RET</b>		1	6+n	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>RETI</b>		1	6+n	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3, NMIS ← 0	R	R	R
	<b>RETB</b>		1	6+n	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), PC <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), PSW ← (SP+2), SP ← SP+3	R	R	R
Stack Manipulation	<b>PUSH</b>	PSW	1	2+n	–	(SP-1) ← PSW, SP ← SP-1			
		rp	1	4+n	–	(SP-1) ← rp <sub>H</sub> , (SP-2) ← rp <sub>L</sub> , SP ← SP-2			
	<b>POP</b>	PSW	1	2+n	–	PSW ← (SP), SP ← SP+1	R	R	R
		rp	1	4+n	–	rp <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), rp <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), SP ← SP+2			
	<b>MOVW</b>	SP,#word	4	–	10+4n	SP ← word			
		SP,AX	2	–	8+2n	SP ← AX			
AX,SP		2	–	8+2n	AX ← SP				
Unconditional Branch	<b>BR</b>	!addr16	3	6+3n	–	PC ← addr16			
		\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8			
		AX	2	8+2n	–	PC <sub>H</sub> ← A, PC <sub>L</sub> ← X			
Conditional Branch	<b>BC</b>	\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY=1			
	<b>BNC</b>	\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY=0			
	<b>BZ</b>	\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z=1			
	<b>BNZ</b>	\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z=0			

- Notes 1.** When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.  
**2.** When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks 1.** 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.



Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag		
				Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
Conditional Branch	<b>BT</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	3	8+3n	9+3n	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=1			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=1			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8+3n	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=1			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	3	–	9+3n	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=1			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10+3n	11+4n	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=1			
	<b>BF</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	10+4n	11+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=0			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=0			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8+3n	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=0			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	11+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=0			
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10+3n	11+4n	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=0			
	<b>BTCLR</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	4	10+4n	12+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if (saddr.bit)=1 then reset (saddr.bit)			
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	4	–	12+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if sfr.bit=1 then reset sfr.bit			
		A.bit,\$addr16	3	8+3n	–	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if A.bit=1 then reset A.bit			
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	4	–	12+4n	PC ← PC+4+jdisp8 if PSW.bit=1 then reset PSW.bit	×	×	×
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	3	10+3n	12+4n+m	PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (HL).bit=1 then reset (HL).bit			
<b>DBNZ</b>	B,\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	B ← B–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if B≠0				
	C,\$addr16	2	6+2n	–	C ← C–1, then PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if C≠0				
	saddr,\$addr16	3	8+3n	10+3n	(saddr) ← (saddr)–1, then PC ← PC+3+jdisp8 if (saddr)≠0				
CPU Control	<b>SEL</b>	RBn	2	4+2n	–	RBS1,0 ← n			
	<b>NOP</b>		1	2+n	–	No Operation			
	<b>EI</b>		2	–	6+2n	IE ← 1 (Enable Interrupt)			
	<b>DI</b>		2	–	6+2n	IE ← 0 (Disable Interrupt)			
	<b>HALT</b>		2	6+2n	–	Set HALT Mode			
	<b>STOP</b>		2	6+2n	–	Set STOP Mode			

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or in the instruction with no data access.
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.

- Remarks**
1. 1 instruction clock cycle is 1 CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
  2. n indicates the number of waits per byte when the external memory expansion area is read or fetched.
  3. m indicates the number of waits when the external memory expansion area is written to.

#### 4.1.6 Instructions listed by addressing type

##### (1) 8-bit instructions

MOV, XCH, ADD, ADDC, SUB, SUBC, AND, OR, XOR, CMP, MULU<sup>Note</sup>, DIVUW<sup>Note</sup>, INC, DEC, ROR, ROL, RORC, ROLC, ROR4, ROL4, PUSH, POP, DBNZ

**Note** The  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y Subseries have no MULU/DIVUW instructions.

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

2nd Operand 1st Operand	#byte	A	r <sup>Note 1</sup>	sfr	saddr	!addr16	PSW	[DE]	[HL]	[HL+byte] [HL+B] [HL+C]	\$addr16	1	None
A	ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP		MOV XCH ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP	MOV XCH	MOV XCH ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP	MOV XCH ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP	MOV	MOV XCH	MOV XCH ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP	MOV XCH ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP		ROR ROL RORC ROLC	
r	MOV	MOV ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP											INC DEC
B, C											DBNZ		
sfr	MOV	MOV											
saddr	MOV ADD ADDC SUB SUBC AND OR XOR CMP	MOV									DBNZ		INC DEC
!addr16		MOV											
PSW	MOV	MOV											PUSH POP
[DE]		MOV											
[HL]		MOV											ROR4 ROL4
[HL+byte] [HL+B] [HL+C]		MOV											
X													MULU <sup>Note2</sup>
C													DIVUW <sup>Note2</sup>

Notes 1. Except r = A.

2. The  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y Subseries have no MULU/DIVUW instructions.

**(2) 16-bit instructions**

MOVW, XCHW, ADDW, SUBW, CMPW, PUSH, POP, INCW, DECW

2nd Operand \ 1st Operand	#word	AX	rp <sup>Note</sup>	sfrp	saddrp	!addr16	SP	None
AX	ADDW SUBW CMPW		MOVW XCHW	MOVW	MOVW	MOVW	MOVW	
rp	MOVW	MOVW <sup>Note</sup>						INCW DECW PUSH POP
sfrp	MOVW	MOVW						
saddrp	MOVW	MOVW						
!addr16		MOVW						
SP	MOVW	MOVW						

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE or HL.

**(3) Bit manipulation instructions**

MOV1, AND1, OR1, XOR1, SET1, CLR1, NOT1, BT, BF, BTCLR

2nd Operand \ 1st Operand	A.bit	sfr.bit	saddr.bit	PSW.bit	[HL].bit	CY	\$addr16	None
A.bit						MOV1	BT BF BTCLR	SET1 CLR1
sfr.bit						MOV1	BT BF BTCLR	SET1 CLR1
saddr.bit						MOV1	BT BF BTCLR	SET1 CLR1
PSW.bit						MOV1	BT BF BTCLR	SET1 CLR1
[HL].bit						MOV1	BT BF BTCLR	SET1 CLR1
CY	MOV1 AND1 OR1 XOR1	MOV1 AND1 OR1 XOR1	MOV1 AND1 OR1 XOR1	MOV1 AND1 OR1 XOR1	MOV1 AND1 OR1 XOR1			SET1 CLR1 NOT1

**(4) Call instructions/branch instructions**

CALL, CALLF, CALLT, BR, BC, BNC, BZ, BNZ, BT, BF, BTCLR, DBNZ

2nd Operand 1st Operand	AX	!addr16	!addr11	[addr5]	\$addr16
Basic Instructions	BR	CALL BR	CALLF	CALLT	BR BC BNC BZ BNZ
Compound Instructions					BT BF BTCLR DBNZ

**(5) Other instructions**

ADJBA, ADJBS, BRK, RET, RETI, RETB, SEL, NOP, EI, DI, HALT, STOP

## 4.2 Instruction Codes

### 4.2.1 Description of instruction code table

r			reg	
R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>0</sub>		
0	0	0	R0	X
0	0	1	R1	A
0	1	0	R2	C
0	1	1	R3	B
1	0	0	R4	E
1	0	1	R5	D
1	1	0	R6	L
1	1	1	R7	H

rp		reg-pair	
P <sub>1</sub>	P <sub>0</sub>		
0	0	RP0	AX
0	1	RP1	BC
1	0	RP2	DE
1	1	RP3	HL

RB		reg-bank
RB <sub>1</sub>	RB <sub>0</sub>	
0	0	RB0
0	1	RB1
1	0	RB2
1	1	RB3

- B<sub>n</sub> : Immediate data corresponding to bit
- Data : 8-bit immediate data corresponding to byte
- Low/High byte : 16-bit immediate data corresponding to word
- Saddr-offset : 16-bit address lower 8-bit offset data corresponding to saddr
- Sfr-offset : sfr 16-bit address lower 8-bit offset data
- Low/High addr : 16-bit immediate data corresponding to addr16
- jdisp : Signed two's complement data (8 bits) of relative address distance between the start and branch addresses of the next instruction
- fa<sub>10-0</sub> : 11 bits of immediate data corresponding to addr11
- ta<sub>4-0</sub> : 5 bits of immediate data corresponding to addr5

4.2.2 Instruction code list

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code			
			B1	B2	B3	B4
8-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOV</b>	r,#byte	1 0 1 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>	Data		
		saddr,#byte	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1	Saddr-offset	Data	
		sfr,#byte	0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1	Sfr-offset	Data	
		A,r	Note 0 1 1 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>			
		r,A	Note 0 1 1 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>			
		A,saddr	1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0	Saddr-offset		
		saddr,A	1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,sfr	1 1 1 1 0 1 0 0	Sfr-offset		
		sfr,A	1 1 1 1 0 1 1 0	Sfr-offset		
		A,!addr16	1 0 0 0 1 1 1 0	Low addr	High addr	
		!addr16,A	1 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	Low addr	High addr	
		PSW,#byte	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	Data	
		A,PSW	1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0		
		PSW,A	1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0		
		A,[DE]	1 0 0 0 0 1 0 1			
		[DE],A	1 0 0 1 0 1 0 1			
		A,[HL]	1 0 0 0 0 1 1 1			
		[HL],A	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	1 0 1 0 1 1 1 0	Data		
		[HL+byte],A	1 0 1 1 1 1 1 0	Data		
	A,[HL+B]	1 0 1 0 1 0 1 1				
	[HL+B],A	1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1				
	A,[HL+C]	1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0				
	[HL+C],A	1 0 1 1 1 0 1 0				
	<b>XCH</b>	A,r	Note 0 0 1 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>			
		A,saddr	1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1	Saddr-offset		
		A,sfr	1 0 0 1 0 0 1 1	Sfr-offset		
		A,!addr16	1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[DE]	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1			
		A,[HL]	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1		
A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0				

**Note** Except r = A.

**CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET**

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code			
			B1	B2	B3	B4
16-Bit Data Transfer	<b>MOVW</b>	rp,#word	0 0 0 1 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0	Low byte	High byte	
		saddrp,#word	1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset	Low byte	High byte
		sfrp,#word	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0	Sfr-offset	Low byte	High byte
		AX,saddrp	1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1	Saddr-offset		
		saddrp,AX	1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1	Saddr-offset		
		AX,sfrp	1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1	Sfr-offset		
		sfrp,AX	1 0 1 1 1 0 0 1	Sfr-offset		
		AX,rp <small>Note 1</small>	1 1 0 0 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0			
		rp,AX <small>Note 1</small>	1 1 0 1 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0			
		AX,laddr16	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	Low addr	High addr	
	!laddr16,AX	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1	Low addr	High addr		
	<b>XCHW</b>	AX,rp <small>Note 1</small>	1 1 1 0 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0			
8-Bit Operation	<b>ADD</b>	A,#byte	0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <small>Note 2</small>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,laddr16	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0		
	<b>ADDC</b>	A,#byte	0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <small>Note 2</small>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 0 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,laddr16	0 0 1 0 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 0 1 0 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 0 1 0 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 0 1 0 1 1		
A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0				

**Notes** 1. Only when rp = BC, DE or HL.

2. Except r = A.



CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code			
			B1	B2	B3	B4
8-Bit Operation	<b>SUB</b>	A,#byte	0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <b>Note</b>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,!addr16	0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0		
	<b>SUBC</b>	A,#byte	0 0 1 1 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <b>Note</b>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 1 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,!addr16	0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 0 1 1 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 1 1 1 0 1 0		
	<b>AND</b>	A,#byte	0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 1 0 1 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <b>Note</b>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 1 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 1 0 1 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,!addr16	0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 1 0 1 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0		

**Note** Except r = A.

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code			
			B1	B2	B3	B4
8-Bit Operation	<b>OR</b>	A,#byte	0 1 1 0 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 1 1 0 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <b>Note</b>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 0 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,!addr16	0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0		
	<b>XOR</b>	A,#byte	0 1 1 1 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <b>Note</b>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 1 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 1 1 1 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,!addr16	0 1 1 1 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 1 1 1 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 1 1 1 0 1 0		
	<b>CMP</b>	A,#byte	0 1 0 0 1 1 0 1	Data		
		saddr,#byte	1 1 0 0 1 0 0 0	Saddr-offset	Data	
		A,r <b>Note</b>	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 0 1 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		r,A	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>		
		A,saddr	0 1 0 0 1 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		A,!addr16	0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0	Low addr	High addr	
		A,[HL]	0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1			
		A,[HL+byte]	0 1 0 0 1 0 0 1	Data		
		A,[HL+B]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1		
		A,[HL+C]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 1 0 0 1 0 1 0		

**Note** Except r = A.

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code			
			B1	B2	B3	B4
16-Bit Operation	<b>ADDW</b>	AX,#word	1 1 0 0 1 0 1 0	Low byte	High byte	
	<b>SUBW</b>	AX,#word	1 1 0 1 1 0 1 0	Low byte	High byte	
	<b>CMPW</b>	AX,#word	1 1 1 0 1 0 1 0	Low byte	High byte	
Multiply/divide	<b>MULU</b> <sup>Note</sup>	X	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 1 0 0 0		
	<b>DIVUW</b> <sup>Note</sup>	C	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 0 0 1 0		
Increment/decrement	<b>INC</b>	r	0 1 0 0 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>			
		saddr	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	Saddr-offset		
	<b>DEC</b>	r	0 1 0 1 0 R <sub>2</sub> R <sub>1</sub> R <sub>0</sub>			
		saddr	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1	Saddr-offset		
	<b>INCW</b>	rp	1 0 0 0 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0			
	<b>DECW</b>	rp	1 0 0 1 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0			
Rotate	<b>ROR</b>	A,1	0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0			
	<b>ROL</b>	A,1	0 0 1 0 0 1 1 0			
	<b>RORC</b>	A,1	0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1			
	<b>ROLC</b>	A,1	0 0 1 0 0 1 1 1			
	<b>ROR4</b>	[HL]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0		
	<b>ROL4</b>	[HL]	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
BCD Adjust	<b>ADJBA</b>		0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
	<b>ADJBS</b>		0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0		
Bit Manipulation	<b>MOV1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 0	Saddr-offset	
		CY,sfr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 0	Sfr-offset	
		CY,A.bit	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 0		
		CY,PSW.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	
		CY,[HL].bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 0		
		saddr.bit,CY	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 0 1	Saddr-offset	
		sfr.bit,CY	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 0 1	Sfr-offset	
		A.bit,CY	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 0 1		
		PSW.bit,CY	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	
	[HL].bit,CY	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 0 1			
	<b>AND1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 1	Saddr-offset	
		CY,sfr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 1	Sfr-offset	
		CY,A.bit	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 1		
		CY,PSW.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	
		CY,[HL].bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 1		

**Note** The  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y Subseries have no MULU/DIVUW instructions.

**CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET**

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code				
			B1	B2	B3	B4	
Bit Manipulation	<b>OR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		CY,sfr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 1 0	Sfr-offset		
		CY,A.bit	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 1 0			
		CY,PSW.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0		
		CY,[HL].bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 0			
	<b>XOR1</b>	CY,saddr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 1	Saddr-offset		
		CY,sfr.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 1 1	Sfr-offset		
		CY,A.bit	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 1 1			
		CY,PSW.bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0		
		CY,[HL].bit	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 1			
	<b>SET1</b>	saddr.bit		0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 0	Saddr-offset		
		sfr.bit		0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 0	Sfr-offset	
		A.bit		0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 0		
		PSW.bit		0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0		
		[HL].bit		0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 1 0		
	<b>CLR1</b>	saddr.bit		0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 1	Saddr-offset		
		sfr.bit		0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 1	Sfr-offset	
		A.bit		0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 1		
		PSW.bit		0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 0 1 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0		
		[HL].bit		0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 1 1		
<b>SET1</b>	CY		0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0				
<b>CLR1</b>	CY		0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1				
<b>NOT1</b>	CY		0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1				
Call Return	<b>CALL</b>	!addr16	1 0 0 1 1 0 1 0	Low addr	High addr		
	<b>CALLF</b>	!addr11	0 fa <sub>10-8</sub> 1 1 0 0	fa <sub>7-0</sub>			
	<b>CALLT</b>	[addr5]	1 1 ta <sub>4-0</sub> 1				
	<b>BRK</b>		1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1				
	<b>RET</b>		1 0 1 0 1 1 1 1				
	<b>RETB</b>		1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1				
	<b>RETI</b>		1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1				
Stack Manipulation	<b>PUSH</b>	PSW	0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0				
		rp	1 0 1 1 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 1				
	<b>POP</b>	PSW	0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1				
		rp	1 0 1 1 0 P <sub>1</sub> P <sub>0</sub> 0				
	<b>MOVW</b>	SP,#word	1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0	Low byte	High byte	
		SP,AX	1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0			
AX,SP		1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0				

CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET

Instruction Group	Mnemonic	Operands	Operation Code				
			B1	B2	B3	B4	
Unconditional Branch	<b>BR</b>	!addr16	1 0 0 1 1 0 1 1	Low addr	High addr		
		\$addr16	1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0	jdisp			
		AX	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0			
Conditional Branch	<b>BC</b>	\$addr16	1 0 0 0 1 1 0 1	jdisp			
	<b>BNC</b>	\$addr16	1 0 0 1 1 1 0 1	jdisp			
	<b>BZ</b>	\$addr16	1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1	jdisp			
	<b>BNZ</b>	\$addr16	1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1	jdisp			
	<b>BT</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 0	Saddr-offset	jdisp		
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 0	Sfr-offset	jdisp	
		A.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 1 0	jdisp		
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	jdisp		
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 0	jdisp		
		<b>BF</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 1 1	Saddr-offset	jdisp
			sfr.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 1	Sfr-offset	jdisp
	A.bit,\$addr16		0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 1 1	jdisp		
	PSW.bit,\$addr16		0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 1 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	jdisp	
	[HL].bit,\$addr16		0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 1 1	jdisp		
	<b>BTCLR</b>	saddr.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 0 1	Saddr-offset	jdisp	
		sfr.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 1	Sfr-offset	jdisp	
		A.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 1 1 0 1	jdisp		
		PSW.bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0	jdisp	
		[HL].bit,\$addr16	0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 B <sub>2</sub> B <sub>1</sub> B <sub>0</sub> 0 1 0 1	jdisp		
	<b>DBNZ</b>	B,\$addr16	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1	jdisp			
		C,\$addr16	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 0	jdisp			
saddr,\$addr16		0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0	Saddr-offset	jdisp			
CPU control	<b>SEL</b>	RBn	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	1 1 RB <sub>1</sub> 1 RB <sub>0</sub> 0 0 0			
	<b>NOP</b>		0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0				
	<b>EI</b>		0 1 1 1 1 0 1 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0			
	<b>DI</b>		0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1	0 0 0 1 1 1 1 0			
	<b>HALT</b>		0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0			
	<b>STOP</b>		0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 5 EXPLANATION OF INSTRUCTIONS

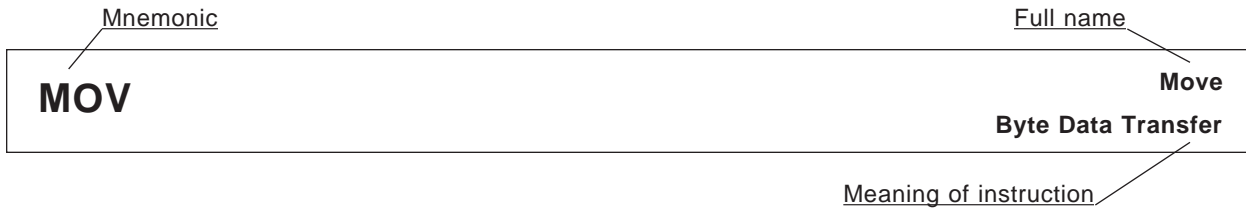
This chapter covers the explanation of the 78K/0 Series products' instructions. Each instruction is described with a mnemonic, including description of multiple operands.

The basic configuration of instruction description is shown on the next page.

For the number of instruction bytes and the operation code, refer to **CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET**.

**All the instructions are common to the 78K/0 Series products.**

DESCRIPTION EXAMPLE



**[Instruction format]**     **MOV dst, src:** Indicates the basic description format of the instruction.

**[Operation]**                 **dst ← src:** Indicates instruction operation using symbols.

**[Operand]**                     Indicates operands which can be specified with this instruction. Refer to **4.1 Operation** for the description of each operand symbol.

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOV</b>	r, #byte
	~ A, saddr
	saddr, A
	~ PSW, #byte

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOV</b>	A, PSW
	~ [HL], A
	A, [HL+byte]
	~ [HL+C], A

**[Flag]**                         Indicates the flag operation which changes by instruction execution. Each flag operation symbol is shown in the legend.

Z	AC	CY

**Legend**

Symbol	Description
Blank	Unchanged
0	Cleared to 0
1	Set to 1
X	Set or cleared according to the result
R	Previously saved value is restored

**[Description]** : Describes the instruction operation in detail.

- The contents of the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand are transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.

**[Description example]**

**MOV A, #4DH;** 4DH is transferred to A register.



## 5.1 8-Bit Data Transfer Instructions

The following instructions are 8-bit data transfer instructions.

MOV ... 94

XCH ... 95

# MOV

**Move**  
**Byte Data Transfer**

[Instruction format]    **MOV dst, src**

[Operation]            **dst ← src**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOV</b>	r, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	sfr, #byte
	A, r <b>Note</b>
	r, A <b>Note</b>
	A, saddr
	saddr, A
	A, sfr
	sfr, A
	A, !addr16
	!addr16, A
	PSW, #byte

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOV</b>	A, PSW
	PSW, A
	A, [DE]
	[DE], A
	A, [HL]
	[HL], A
	A, [HL+byte]
	[HL+byte], A
	A, [HL+B]
	[HL+B], A
	A, [HL+C]
	[HL+C], A

**Note** Except r = A

[Flag]

PSW, #byte and PSW,  
A operands

All other operand  
combinations

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- The contents of the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand are transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.
- None of the interrupts is acknowledged between the MOV PSW, #byte instruction/the MOV PSW, A instruction and the next one instruction.

[Description example]

**MOV A, #4DH;** 4DH is transferred to A register.

**XCH****Exchange  
Byte Data Exchange****[Instruction format]**    **XCH dst, src****[Operation]**            **dst ↔ src****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>XCH</b>	A, r <span style="float: right;"><b>Note</b></span>
	A, saddr
	A, sfr
	A, !addr16
	A, [DE]

**Note** Except r = A

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>XCH</b>	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The 1st and 2nd operand contents are exchanged.

**[Description example]****XCH A, FEBCH;** The A register contents and address FEBCH contents are exchanged.

## 5.2 16-Bit Data Transfer Instructions

The following instructions are 16-bit data transfer instructions.

MOVW ... 97

XCHW ... 98

**MOVW**

**Move Word**  
**Word Data Transfer**

**[Instruction format]**    **MOVW dst, src**

**[Operation]**            **dst ← src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOVW</b>	rp, #word
	saddrp, #word
	sfrp, #word
	AX, saddrp
	saddrp, AX
	AX, sfrp

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOVW</b>	sfrp, AX
	AX, rp <span style="float: right;"><b>Note</b></span>
	rp, AX <span style="float: right;"><b>Note</b></span>
	AX, !addr16
	!addr16, AX

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE or HL

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The contents of the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand are transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.

**[Description example]**

**MOVW AX, HL;** The HL register contents are transferred to the AX register.

**[Caution]**

Only an even address can be specified. An odd address cannot be specified.

**XCHW**Exchange Word  
Word Data Exchange**[Instruction format]**    **XCHW dst, src****[Operation]**            **dst ↔ src****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>XCHW</b>	AX, rp <span style="float: right;"><small>Note</small></span>

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE or HL**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The 1st and 2nd operand contents are exchanged.

**[Description example]****XCHW AX, BC;** The memory contents of AX register are exchanged with those of the BC register.

### 5.3 8-Bit Operation Instructions

The following are 8-bit operation instructions.

ADD ... 100  
ADDC ... 101  
SUB ... 102  
SUBC ... 103  
AND ... 104  
OR ... 105  
XOR ... 106  
CMP ... 107

**ADD****Add**  
**Byte Data Addition****[Instruction format]**    **ADD dst, src****[Operation]**            **dst, CY ← dst + src****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>ADD</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;"><b>Note</b></span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

**Note** Except r = A

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>ADD</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand is added to the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the CY flag and the destination operand (dst).
- If the addition result shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the addition generates a carry out of bit 7, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- If the addition generates a carry for bit 4 out of bit 3, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]****ADD CR10, #56H;** 56H is added to the CR10 register and the result is stored in the CR10 register.



**ADDC**

**Add with Carry**  
**Addition of Byte Data with Carry**

**[Instruction format]**     **ADDC dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst, CY ← dst + src + CY**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>ADDC</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;"><b>Note</b></span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

**Note** Except r = A

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>ADDC</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand, the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the CY flag are added and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst) and the CY flag. The CY flag is added to the least significant bit. This instruction is mainly used to add two or more bytes.
- If the addition result shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the addition generates a carry out of bit 7, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- If the addition generates a carry for bit 4 out of bit 3, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**ADDC A, [HL+B];** The A register contents and the contents at address (HL register + (B register)) and the CY flag are added and the result is stored in the A register.

**SUB****Subtract  
Byte Data Subtraction****[Instruction format]**    **SUB dst, src****[Operation]**            **dst, CY ← dst – src****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>SUB</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;">Note</span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>SUB</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst) and the CY flag. The destination operand can be cleared to 0 by equalizing the source operand (src) and the destination operand (dst).
- If the subtraction shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 7, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]****SUB D, A;** The A register is subtracted from the D register and the result is stored in the D register.

**SUBC**

**Subtract with Carry**  
**Subtraction of Byte Data with Carry**

**[Instruction format]**     **SUBC dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst, CY ← dst – src – CY**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>SUBC</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;">Note</span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

**Note** Except r = A

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>SUBC</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the CY flag are subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst). The CY flag is subtracted from the least significant bit. This instruction is mainly used for subtraction of two or more bytes.
- If the subtraction shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 7, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**SUBC A, [HL];** The (HL register) address contents and the CY flag are subtracted from the A register and the result is stored in the A register.

**AND**

**And**  
**Logical Product of Byte Data**

**[Instruction format]**     **AND dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← dst ∧ src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>AND</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;"><b>Note</b></span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>AND</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×		

**[Description]**

- Bit-wise logical product is obtained from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the logical product shows that all bits are 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**AND FEBAH, #11011100B;** Bit-wise logical product of FEBAH contents and 11011100B is obtained and the result is stored at FEBAH.

**OR**Or  
Logical Sum of Byte Data**[Instruction format]**    **OR dst, src****[Operation]**            **dst ← dst ∨ src****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>OR</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;">Note</span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

**Note** Except r = A

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>OR</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×		

**[Description]**

- Bit-wise logical sum is obtained from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the logical sum shows that all bits are 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**OR A, FE98H;** Bit-wise logical sum of the A register and FE98H is obtained and the result is stored in the A register.

**XOR**

**Exclusive Or**  
**Exclusive Logical Sum of Byte Data**

**[Instruction format]**    **XOR dst, src**

**[Operation]**            **dst ← dst ∨ src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>XOR</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;"><small>Note</small></span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>XOR</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×		

**[Description]**

- Bit-wise exclusive logical sum is obtained from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).  
Logical negation of all bits of the destination operand (dst) is possible by selecting #0FFH for the source operand (src) with this instruction.
- If the exclusive logical sum shows that all bits are 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**XOR A, L;** Bit-wise exclusive logical sum of the A and L registers is obtained and the result is stored in the A register.

**CMP****Compare  
Byte Data Comparison****[Instruction format]**    **CMP dst, src****[Operation]**            **dst – src****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>CMP</b>	A, #byte
	saddr, #byte
	A, r <span style="float: right;">Note</span>
	r, A
	A, saddr

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>CMP</b>	A, !addr16
	A, [HL]
	A, [HL+byte]
	A, [HL+B]
	A, [HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand.  
The subtraction result is not stored anywhere and only the Z, AC and CY flags are changed.
- If the subtraction result is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 7, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**CMP FE38H, #38H;** 38H is subtracted from the contents at address FE38H and only the flags are changed (comparison of contents at address FE38H and the immediate data).

## 5.4 16-Bit Operation Instructions

The following are 16-bit operation instructions.

ADDW ... 109  
SUBW ... 110  
CMPW ... 111



**ADDW**

**Add Word**  
**Word Data Addition**

**[Instruction format]**     **ADDW dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst, CY ← dst + src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>ADDW</b>	AX, #word

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand is added to the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the addition result shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the addition generates a carry out of bit 15, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- As a result of addition, the AC flag becomes undefined.

**[Description example]**

**ADDW AX, #ABCDH;** ABCDH is added to the AX register and the result is stored in the AX register.

**SUBW**

**Subtract Word**  
**Word Data Subtraction**

**[Instruction format]**     **SUBW dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst, CY ← dst – src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>SUBW</b>	AX, #word

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst) and the CY flag. The destination operand can be cleared to 0 by equalizing the source operand (src) and the destination operand (dst).
- If the subtraction shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 15, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- As a result of subtraction, the AC flag becomes undefined.

**[Description example]**

**SUBW AX, #ABCDH;** ABCDH is subtracted from the AX register contents and the result is stored in the AX register.

**CMPW**

**Compare Word  
Word Data Comparison**

**[Instruction format]**     **CMPW dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst – src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>CMPW</b>	AX, #word

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand.  
The subtraction result is not stored anywhere and only the Z, AC and CY flags are changed.
- If the subtraction result is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 15, the CY flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared to (0).
- As a result of subtraction, the AC flag becomes undefined.

**[Description example]**

**CMPW AX, #ABCDH;** ABCDH is subtracted from the AX register and only the flags are changed (comparison of the AX register and the immediate data).

## 5.5 Multiply/Divide Instructions

The following are multiply/divide instructions.

MULU ... 113  
DIVUW ... 114

**Caution** The  $\mu$ PD78002/78002Y Subseries have no MULU/DIVUW instructions.

**MULU**

**Multiply Unsigned  
Unsigned Multiplication of Data**

**[Instruction format]**     **MULU src**

**[Operation]**              **$AX \leftarrow A \times \text{src}$**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(src)
<b>MULU</b>	X

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The A register contents and the source operand (src) data are multiplied as unsigned data and the result is stored in the AX register.

**[Description example]**

**MULU X;** The A register contents and the X register contents are multiplied and the result is stored in the AX register.

**DIVUW**

**Divide Unsigned Word**  
**Unsigned Division of Word Data**

**[Instruction format]**     **DIVUW dst**

**[Operation]**             **AX (quotient), dst (remainder) ← AX ÷ dst**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>DIVUW</b>	C

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The AX register contents are divided with the destination operand (dst) contents and the quotient and the remainder are stored in the AX register and the destination operand (dst), respectively. Division is executed using the AX register and destination operand (dst) contents as unsigned data. However, when the destination operand (dst) is 0, the X register contents are stored in the C register and AX becomes 0FFFFH.

**[Description example]**

**DIVUW C;** The AX register contents are divided by the C register contents and the quotient and the remainder are stored in the AX register and the C register, respectively.

## 5.6 Increment/Decrement Instructions

The following are increment/decrement instructions.

INC ... 116  
DEC ... 117  
INCW ... 118  
DECW ... 119

**INC****Increment  
Byte Data Increment****[Instruction format]**    **INC dst****[Operation]**            **dst ← dst + 1****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>INC</b>	r
	saddr

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are incremented by only one.
- If the increment result is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the increment generates a carry for bit 4 out of bit 3, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).
- Because this instruction is frequently used for increment of a counter for repeated operations and an indexed addressing offset register, the CY flag contents are not changed (to hold the CY flag contents in multiple-byte operation).

**[Description example]****INC B;** The B register is incremented.



**DEC****Decrement  
Byte Data Decrement****[Instruction format]**     **DEC dst****[Operation]**             **dst ← dst – 1****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>DEC</b>	r
	saddr

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are decremented by only one.
- If the decrement result is 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).
- If the decrement generates a carry for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared to (0).
- Because this instruction is frequently used for decrement of a counter for repeated operations and an indexed addressing offset register, the CY flag contents are not changed (to hold the CY flag contents in multiple-byte operation).
- If dst is the B or C register or saddr, and it is not desired to change the AC and CY flag contents, the DBNZ instruction can be used.

**[Description example]****DEC FE92H;** The contents at address FE92H are decremented.

**INCW**

**Increment Word  
Word Data Increment**

**[Instruction format]**     **INCW dst**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← dst + 1**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>INCW</b>	rp

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are incremented by only one.
- Because this instruction is frequently used for increment of a register (pointer) used for addressing, the Z, AC and CY flag contents are not changed.

**[Description example]**

**INCW HL;** The HL register is incremented.

**DECW**

**Decrement Word**  
**Word Data Decrement**

**[Instruction format]**     **DECW dst**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← dst – 1**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand (dst)
<b>DECW</b>	rp

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are decremented by only one.
- Because this instruction is frequently used for decrement of a register (pointer) used for addressing, the Z, AC and CY flag contents are not changed.

**[Description example]**

**DECW DE;** The DE register is decremented.

## 5.7 Rotate Instructions

The following are rotate instructions.

ROR ... 121

ROL ... 122

RORC ... 123

ROLC ... 124

ROR4 ... 125

ROL4 ... 126

**ROR**

**Rotate Right**  
**Byte Data Rotation to the Right**

**[Instruction format]**    **ROR dst, cnt**

**[Operation]**            **(CY, dst<sub>7</sub> ← dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>m-1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>) × one time**

**[Operand]**

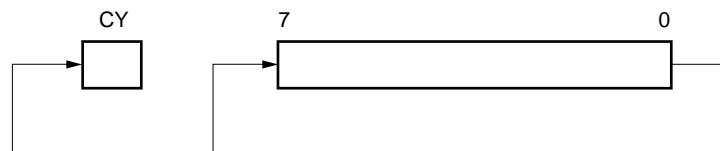
Mnemonic	Operand(dst,cnt)
<b>ROR</b>	A, 1

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		×

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified with the 1st operand are rotated to the right just once.
- The LSB (bit 0) contents are simultaneously rotated to MSB (bit 7) and transferred to the CY flag.



**[Description example]**

**ROR A, 1;** The A register contents are rotated one bit to the right.

**ROL**

**Rotate Left**  
**Byte Data Rotation to the Left**

**[Instruction format]**    **ROL dst, cnt**

**[Operation]**            **(CY, dst<sub>0</sub> ← dst<sub>7</sub>, dst<sub>m+1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>) × one time**

**[Operand]**

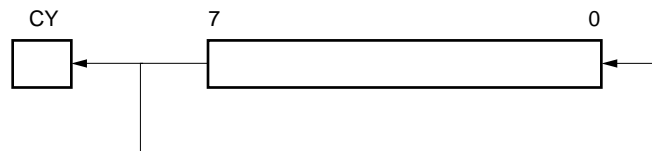
Mnemonic	Operand(dst,cnt)
<b>ROL</b>	A, 1

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		×

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified with the 1st operand are rotated to the left just once.
- The MSB (bit 7) contents are simultaneously rotated to LSB (bit 0) and transferred to the CY flag.



**[Description example]**

**ROL A, 1;** The A register contents are rotated to the left by one bit.

**RORC**

**Rotate Right with Carry**  
**Byte Data Rotation to the Right with Carry**

[Instruction format]    **RORC dst, cnt**

[Operation]            **(CY ← dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>7</sub> ← CY, dst<sub>m-1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>) × one time**

[Operand]

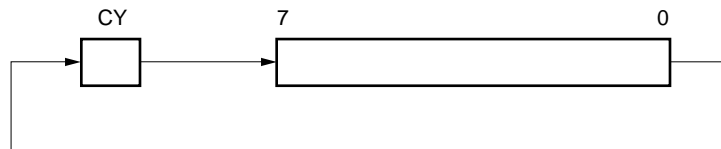
Mnemonic	Operand(dst,cnt)
<b>RORC</b>	A, 1

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY
		×

[Description]

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified with the 1st operand are rotated just once to the right with carry.



[Description example]

**RORC A, 1;** The A register contents are rotated to the right by one bit including the CY flag.

**ROLC**

**Rotate Left with Carry**  
**Byte Data Rotation to the Left with Carry**

**[Instruction format]**    **ROLC dst, cnt**

**[Operation]**            **(CY ← dst<sub>7</sub>, dst<sub>0</sub> ← CY, dst<sub>m+1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>) × one time**

**[Operand]**

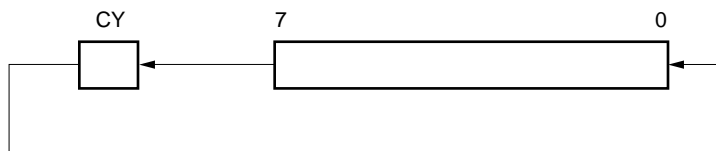
Mnemonic	Operand(dst,cnt)
<b>ROLC</b>	A, 1

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		×

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified with the 1st operand are rotated just once to the left with carry.



**[Description example]**

**ROLC A, 1;** The A register contents are rotated to the left by one bit including the CY flag.



# ROR4

Rotate Right Digit  
Digit Rotation to the Right

[Instruction format] ROR4 dst

[Operation]  $A_{3-0} \leftarrow (dst)_{3-0}, (dst)_{7-4} \leftarrow A_{3-0}, (dst)_{3-0} \leftarrow (dst)_{7-4}$

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
ROR4	[HL] <span style="float: right;">Note</span>

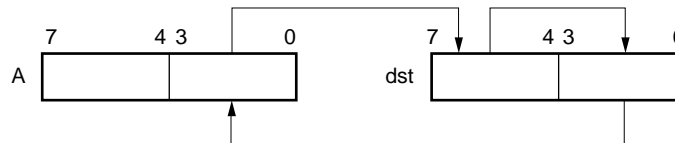
**Note** Specify an area other than the SFR area as operand [HL].

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- The lower 4 bits of the A register and the 2-digit data (4-bit data) of the destination operand (dst) are rotated to the right. The higher 4 bits of the A register remain unchanged.



[Description example]

**ROR4 [HL];** Rightward digit rotation is executed with the memory contents specified with the A and HL registers.

	A				(HL)			
	7	4	3	0	7	4	3	0
Before Execution	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0
After Execution	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1

# ROL4

Rotate Left Digit  
Digit Rotation to the Left

[Instruction format]    ROL4 dst

[Operation]             $A_{3-0} \leftarrow (dst)_{7-4}, (dst)_{3-0} \leftarrow A_{3-0}, (dst)_{7-4} \leftarrow (dst)_{3-0}$

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>ROL4</b>	[HL] <span style="float: right;">Note</span>

**Note** Specify an area other than the SFR area as operand [HL].

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- The lower 4 bits of the A register and the 2-digit data (4-bit data) of the destination operand (dst) are rotated to the left.
- The higher 4 bits of the A register remain unchanged.



[Description example]

**ROL4 [HL];** Leftward digit rotation is executed with the memory contents specified with the A and HL registers.

	A				(HL)			
	7	4	3	0	7	4	3	0
Before Execution	0001		0010		0100		1000	
After Execution	0001		0100		1000		0010	

## 5.8 BCD Adjust Instructions

The following are BCD adjust instructions.

ADJBA ... 128

ADJBS ... 129

**ADJBA**

**Decimal Adjust Register for Addition  
Decimal Adjustment of Addition Result**

**[Instruction format]**     **ADJBA**

**[Operation]**                **Decimal Adjust Accumulator for Addition**

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The A register, CY flag and AC flag are decimally adjusted from their contents. This instruction carries out an operation having meaning only when the BCD (binary coded decimal) data is added and the addition result is stored in the A register (in all other cases, the instruction carries out an operation having no meaning). See the table below for the adjustment method.
- If the adjustment result shows that the A register contents are 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).

Condition		Operation
$A_3 \text{ to } A_0 \leq 9$	$A_7 \text{ to } A_4 \leq 9 \text{ and } CY = 0$	$A \leftarrow A, CY \leftarrow 0, AC \leftarrow 0$
$AC = 0$	$A_7 \text{ to } A_4 \geq 10 \text{ or } CY = 1$	$A \leftarrow A+01100000B, CY \leftarrow 1, AC \leftarrow 0$
$A_3 \text{ to } A_0 \geq 10$	$A_7 \text{ to } A_4 < 9 \text{ and } CY = 0$	$A \leftarrow A+00000110B, CY \leftarrow 0, AC \leftarrow 1$
$AC = 0$	$A_7 \text{ to } A_4 \geq 9 \text{ or } CY = 1$	$A \leftarrow A+01100110B, CY \leftarrow 1, AC \leftarrow 1$
$AC = 1$	$A_7 \text{ to } A_4 \leq 9 \text{ and } CY = 0$	$A \leftarrow A+00000110B, CY \leftarrow 0, AC \leftarrow 0$
	$A_7 \text{ to } A_4 \geq 10 \text{ or } CY = 1$	$A \leftarrow A+01100110B, CY \leftarrow 1, AC \leftarrow 0$

**ADJBS**

**Decimal Adjust Register for Subtraction  
Decimal Adjustment of Subtraction Result**

**[Instruction format]**     **ADJBS**

**[Operation]**                 **Decimal Adjust Accumulator for Subtraction**

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

**[Description]**

- The A register, CY flag and AC flag are decimally adjusted from their contents. This instruction carries out an operation having meaning only when the BCD (binary coded decimal) data is subtracted and the subtraction result is stored in the A register (in all other cases, the instruction carries out an operation having no meaning).

See the table below for the adjustment method.

- If the adjustment result shows that the A register contents are 0, the Z flag is set to (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared to (0).

Condition		Operation
AC = 0	CY = 0	$A \leftarrow A, CY \leftarrow 0, AC \leftarrow 0$
	CY = 1	$A \leftarrow A-01100000B, CY \leftarrow 1, AC \leftarrow 0$
AC = 1	CY = 0	$A \leftarrow A-00000110B, CY \leftarrow 0, AC \leftarrow 0$
	CY = 1	$A \leftarrow A-01100110B, CY \leftarrow 1, AC \leftarrow 0$

## 5.9 Bit Manipulation Instructions

The following are bit manipulation instructions.

MOV1 ... 131

AND1 ... 132

OR1 ... 133

XOR1 ... 134

SET1 ... 135

CLR1 ... 136

NOT1 ... 137

# MOV1

Move Single Bit  
1 Bit Data Transfer

[Instruction format]    **MOV1 dst, src**

[Operation]            **dst ← src**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOV1</b>	CY, saddr.bit
	CY, sfr.bit
	CY, A.bit
	CY, PSW.bit
	CY, [HL].bit

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOV1</b>	saddr.bit, CY
	sfr.bit, CY
	A.bit, CY
	PSW.bit, CY
	[HL].bit, CY

[Flag]

dst = CY

Z	AC	CY
		×

PSW.bit

Z	AC	CY
×	×	

In all other cases

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- Bit data of the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand.
- When the destination operand (dst) is CY or PSW.bit, only the corresponding flag is changed.

[Description example]

**MOV1 P3.4, CY;** The CY flag contents are transferred to bit 4 of port 3.

**AND1**

**And Single Bit  
1 Bit Data Logical Product**

**[Instruction format]**     **AND1 dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← dst ∧ src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>AND1</b>	CY, saddr.bit
	CY, sfr.bit
	CY, A.bit
	CY, PSW.bit
	CY, [HL].bit

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		×

**[Description]**

- Logical product of bit data of the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is obtained and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- The operation result is stored in the CY flag (because of the destination operand (dst)).

**[Description example]**

**AND1 CY, FE7FH.3;** Logical product of FE7FH bit 3 and the CY flag is obtained and the result is stored in the CY flag.



**OR1**

**Or Single Bit  
1 Bit Data Logical Sum**

**[Instruction format]**     **OR1 dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← dst ∨ src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>OR1</b>	CY, saddr.bit
	CY, sfr.bit
	CY, A.bit
	CY, PSW.bit
	CY, [HL].bit

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		×

**[Description]**

- Logical sum of bit data of the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is obtained and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- The operation result is stored in the CY flag (because of the destination operand (dst)).

**[Description example]**

**OR1 CY, P2.5;** Logical sum or port 2 bit 5 and the CY flag is obtained and the result is stored in the CY flag.

**XOR1**

**Exclusive Or Single Bit  
1 Bit Data Exclusive Logical Sum**

**[Instruction format]**     **XOR1 dst, src**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← dst ∨ src**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>XOR1</b>	CY, saddr.bit
	CY, sfr.bit
	CY, A.bit
	CY, PSW.bit
	CY, [HL].bit

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		×

**[Description]**

- Exclusive logical sum of bit data of the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is obtained and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- The operation result is stored in the CY flag (because of the destination operand (dst)).

**[Description example]**

**XOR1 CY, A.7;** Exclusive logical sum of A register bit 7 and the CY flag is obtained and the result is stored in the CY flag.

**SET1****Set Single Bit (Carry Flag)****1 Bit Data Set****[Instruction format]**     **SET1 dst****[Operation]**             **dst ← 1****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>SET1</b>	saddr.bit
	sfr.bit
	A.bit
	PSW.bit
	[HL].bit
	CY

**[Flag]**

dst = PSW.bit

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

dst = CY

Z	AC	CY
		1

In all other cases

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) is set to (1).
- When the destination operand (dst) is CY or PSW.bit, only the corresponding flag is set to (1).

**[Description example]****SET1 FE55H.1;** Bit 1 of FE55H is set to (1).

**CLR1**

**Clear Single Bit (Carry Flag)**  
**1 Bit Data Clear**

**[Instruction format]**     **CLR1 dst**

**[Operation]**             **dst ← 0**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>CLR1</b>	saddr.bit
	sfr.bit
	A.bit
	PSW.bit
	[HL].bit
	CY

**[Flag]**

dst = PSW.bit

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

dst = CY

Z	AC	CY
		0

In all other cases

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) is cleared to (0).
- When the destination operand (dst) is CY or PSW.bit, only the corresponding flag is cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**CLR1 P3.7;** Bit 7 of port 3 is cleared to (0).

**NOT1**

Not Single Bit (Carry Flag)  
1 Bit Data Logical Negation

[Instruction format]    **NOT1 dst**

[Operation]            **dst ←  $\overline{\text{dst}}$**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
<b>NOT1</b>	CY

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY
		×

[Description]

- The CY flag is inverted.

[Description example]

**NOT1 CY**; The CY flag is inverted.

## 5.10 Call Return Instructions

The following are call return instructions.

CALL ... 139  
CALLF ... 140  
CALLT ... 141  
BRK ... 142  
RET ... 143  
RETI ... 144  
RETB ... 145

**CALL**

Call

Subroutine Call (16 Bit Direct)

**[Instruction format]**    **CALL target**

**[Operation]**            **(SP-1) ← (PC+3)<sub>H</sub>,**  
                               **(SP-2) ← (PC+3)<sub>L</sub>,**  
                               **SP     ← SP-2,**  
                               **PC     ← target**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(target)
<b>CALL</b>	!addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This is a subroutine call with a 16-bit absolute address or a register indirect address.
- The start address (PC+3) of the next instruction is saved in the stack and is branched to the address specified with the target operand (target).

**[Description example]****CALL !3059H;** Subroutine call to 3059H

**CALLF**

Call Flag

Subroutine Call (11 Bit Direct Specification)

**[Instruction format]**      **CALLF Target**

**[Operation]**                    **(SP-1) ← (PC+2)<sub>H</sub>,**  
                                       **(SP-2) ← (PC+2)<sub>L</sub>,**  
                                       **SP     ← SP-2,**  
                                       **PC     ← target**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(target)
<b>CALLF</b>	!addr11

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This is a subroutine call which can only be branched to addresses 0800H to 0FFFH.
- The start address (PC+2) of the next instruction is saved in the stack and is branched in the range of addresses 0800H to 0FFFH.
- Only the lower 11 bits of an address are specified (with the higher 5 bits fixed to 00001B).
- The program size can be compressed by locating the subroutine at 0800H to 0FFFH and using this instruction. If the program is in the external memory, the execution time can be decreased.

**[Description example]****CALLF !0C2AH;** Subroutine call to 0C2AH



**CALLT**

Call Table  
Subroutine Call (Refer to the Call Table)

[Instruction format]    **CALLT [addr5]**

[Operation]            **(SP-1) ← (PC+1)<sub>H</sub>,**  
                               **(SP-2) ← (PC+1)<sub>L</sub>,**  
                               **SP     ← SP-2,**  
                               **PC<sub>H</sub>   ← (00000000, addr5+1)**  
                               **PC<sub>L</sub>   ← (00000000, addr5)**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand([addr5])
<b>CALLT</b>	[addr5]

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- This is a subroutine call for call table reference.
- The start address (PC+1) of the next instruction is saved in the stack and is branched to the address indicated with the word data of a call table (the higher 8 bits of address are fixed to 00000000B and the next 5 bits are specified with addr5).

[Description example]

**CALLT [40H];** Subroutine call to the word data addresses 0040H and 0041H.

**BRK**

**Break**  
**Software Vectored Interrupt**

**[Instruction format]**     **BRK**

**[Operation]**

**(SP-1) ← PSW,**  
**(SP-2) ← (PC+1)<sub>H</sub>,**  
**(SP-3) ← (PC+1)<sub>L</sub>,**  
**IE     ← 0,**  
**SP     ← SP-3,**  
**PC<sub>H</sub>   ← (3FH),**  
**PC<sub>L</sub>   ← (3EH)**

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This is a software interrupt instruction.
- PSW and the next instruction address (PC+1) are saved in the stack. After that, the IE flag is cleared to (0) and the saved data is branched to the address indicated with the word data at the vector address (003EH). Because the IE flag is cleared to (0), the subsequent maskable vectored interrupts are disabled.
- The RETB instruction is used to return from the software vectored interrupt generated with this instruction.

**RET****Return  
Return from Subroutine****[Instruction format]**     **RET****[Operation]**             **PC<sub>L</sub> ← (SP),**  
                              **PC<sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1),**  
                              **SP ← SP+2****[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This is a return instruction from the subroutine call made with the CALL, CALLF and CALLT instructions.
- The word data saved in the stack returns to the PC, and the program returns from the subroutine.

**RETI**

**Return from Interrupt**  
**Return from Hardware Vectored Interrupt**

**[Instruction format]**     **RETI**

**[Operation]**             **PC<sub>L</sub>** ← **(SP)**,  
**PC<sub>H</sub>** ← **(SP+1)**,  
**PSW** ← **(SP+2)**,  
**SP**    ← **SP+3**,  
**NMIS** ← **0**

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
R	R	R

**[Description]**

- This is a return instruction from the vectored interrupt.
- The data saved in the stack returns to the PC and the PSW, and the program returns from the interrupt service routine.
- This instruction cannot be used for return from the software interrupt with the BRK instruction.
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next instruction to be executed.
- The NMIS flag is set to 1 by acknowledgment of a non-maskable interrupt, and cleared to 0 by the RETI instruction.

**[Caution]**

When the return from non-maskable interrupt servicing is performed by an instruction other than the RETI instruction, the NMIS flag is not cleared to 0, and therefore no interrupts (including non-maskable interrupts) except software interrupts can be acknowledged.

**RETB**

Return from Break  
Return from Software Vectored Interrupt

**[Instruction format]**     RETB

**[Operation]**             $PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$   
                                $PC_H \leftarrow (SP+1),$   
                                $PSW \leftarrow (SP+2),$   
                                $SP \leftarrow SP+3$

**[Operand]**  
 None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
R	R	R

**[Description]**

- This is a return instruction from the software interrupt generated with the BRK instruction.
- The data saved in the stack returns to the PC and the PSW, and the program returns from the interrupt service routine.
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next instruction to be executed.

## 5.11 Stack Manipulation Instructions

The following are stack manipulation instructions.

PUSH ... 147

POP ... 148

MOVW SP, src ... 149

MOVW AX, SP ... 149

**PUSH**

Push

Push

**[Instruction format]**    **PUSH src****[Operation]**                    **When src = rp**                    **When src = PSW**
 $(SP-1) \leftarrow srcH,$   
 $(SP-2) \leftarrow srcL,$   
 $SP \leftarrow SP-2$ 
 $(SP-1) \leftarrow src$   
 $SP \leftarrow SP-1$ 
**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(src)
<b>PUSH</b>	PSW
	rp

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The data of the register specified with the source operand (src) is saved in the stack.

**[Description example]****PUSH AX;** AX register contents are saved in the stack.

# POP

Pop  
Pop

[Instruction format] POP dst

[Operation]	When dst = rp	When dst = PSW
	dst <sub>L</sub> ← (SP), dst <sub>H</sub> ← (SP+1), SP ← SP+2	dst ← (SP) SP ← SP+1

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst)
POP	PSW
	rp

[Flag]

dst =rp

Z	AC	CY

PSW

Z	AC	CY
R	R	R

[Description]

- Data is returned from the stack to the register specified with the destination operand (dst).
- When the operand is PSW, each flag is replaced with stack data.
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between the POP PSW instruction and the subsequent instruction.

[Description example]

**POP AX;** The stack data is returned to the AX register.



# MOVW SP, src

# MOVW AX, SP

Move Word  
Word Data Transfer with Stack Pointer

[Instruction format]    **MOVW dst, src**

[Operation]            **dst ← src**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,src)
<b>MOVW</b>	SP, #word
	SP, AX
	AX, SP

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- This is an instruction to manipulate the stack pointer contents.
- The source operand (src) specified with the 2nd operand is stored in the destination operand (dst) specified with the 1st operand.

[Description example]

**MOVW SP, #FE1FH;** FE1FH is stored in the stack pointer.

## 5.12 Unconditional Branch Instruction

Unconditional branch instruction is shown below.

BR ... 151

**BR****Branch  
Unconditional Branch****[Instruction format]**    **BR target****[Operation]**            **PC ← target****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(target)
<b>BR</b>	!addr16
	AX
	\$addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This is an instruction to branch unconditionally.
- The word data of the target address operand (target) is transferred to PC and branched.

**[Description example]****BR AX;** The AX register contents are branched as address.

### 5.13 Conditional Branch Instructions

Conditional branch instructions are shown below.

BC ... 153  
BNC ... 154  
BZ ... 155  
BNZ ... 156  
BT ... 157  
BF ... 158  
BTCLR ... 159  
DBNZ ... 160

**BC****Branch if Carry****Conditional Branch with Carry Flag (CY = 1)****[Instruction format]**    **BC \$addr16****[Operation]**            **PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY = 1****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(\$addr16)
<b>BC</b>	\$addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- When CY = 1, data is branched to the address specified with the operand.  
When CY = 0, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

**BC \$300H;** When CY = 1, data is branched to 0300H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 027FH to 037EH).

**BNC**

**Branch if Not Carry**  
**Conditional Branch with Carry Flag (CY = 0)**

**[Instruction format]**    **BNC \$addr16**

**[Operation]**            **PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if CY = 0**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(\$addr16)
<b>BNC</b>	\$addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- When CY = 0, data is branched to the address specified with the operand.  
When CY = 1, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

**BNC \$300H;** When CY = 0, data is branched to 0300H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 027FH to 037EH).

**BZ**

**Branch if Zero**  
**Conditional Branch with Zero Flag (Z = 1)**

**[Instruction format]**    **BZ \$addr16**

**[Operation]**            **PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z = 1**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(\$addr16)
<b>BZ</b>	\$addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- When Z = 1, data is branched to the address specified with the operand.  
When Z = 0, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

**DEC B**

**BZ \$3C5H;** When the B register is 0, data is branched to 03C5H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 0344H to 0443H).

**BNZ**

**Branch if Not Zero**  
**Conditional Branch with Zero Flag (Z = 0)**

[Instruction format]    **BNZ \$addr16**

[Operation]            **PC ← PC+2+jdisp8 if Z = 0**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(\$addr16)
<b>BNZ</b>	\$addr16

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- When Z = 0, data is branched to the address specified with the operand.  
When Z = 1, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

[Description example]

**CMP A, #55H**

**BNZ \$0A39H;** If the A register is not 0055H, data is branched to 0A39H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 09B8H to 0AB7H).



**BT****Branch if True****Conditional Branch by Bit Test (Byte Data Bit = 1)****[Instruction format]**     **BT bit, \$addr16****[Operation]**             **PC ← PC+b+jdisp8 if bit = 1****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(bit,\$addr16)	b(Number of bytes)
<b>BT</b>	saddr.bit, \$addr16	3
	sfr.bit, \$addr16	4
	A.bit, \$addr16	3
	PSW.bit, \$addr16	3
	[HL].bit, \$addr16	3

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have been set to (1), data is branched to the address specified with the 2nd operand (\$addr16).  
If the 1st operand (bit) contents have not been set to (1), no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

**BT FE47H.3, \$55CH;** When bit 3 at address FE47H is 1, data is branched to 055CH (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 04DAH to 05D9H).

**BF****Branch if False**  
**Conditional Branch by Bit Test (Byte Data Bit = 0)****[Instruction format]**    **BF bit, \$addr16****[Operation]**            **PC ← PC+b+jdisp8 if bit = 0****[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(bit,\$addr16)	b(Number of bytes)
<b>BF</b>	saddr.bit, \$addr16	4
	sfr.bit, \$addr16	4
	A.bit, \$addr16	3
	PSW.bit, \$addr16	4
	[HL].bit, \$addr16	3

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have been cleared to (0), data is branched to the address specified with the 2nd operand (\$addr16).  
If the 1st operand (bit) contents have not been cleared to (0), no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

**BF P2.2, \$1549H;** When bit 2 of port 2 is 0, data is branched to address 1549H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 14C6H to 15C5H).

**BTCLR**

**Branch if True and Clear**  
**Conditional Branch and Clear by Bit Test (Byte Data Bit = 1)**

**[Instruction format]**    **BTCLR bit, \$addr16**

**[Operation]**            **PC ← PC+b+jdisp8 if bit = 1, then bit ← 0**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(bit,\$addr16)	b(Number of bytes)
<b>BTCLR</b>	saddr.bit, \$addr16	4
	sfr.bit, \$addr16	4
	A.bit, \$addr16	3
	PSW.bit, \$addr16	4
	[HL].bit, \$addr16	3

**[Flag]**

bit =PSW.bit

Z	AC	CY
×	×	×

In all other cases

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have been set to (1), they are cleared to (0) and branched to the address specified with the 2nd operand.  
If the 1st operand (bit) contents have not been set to (1), no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.
- When the 1st operand (bit) is PSW.bit, the corresponding flag contents are cleared to (0).

**[Description example]**

**BTCLR PSW.0, \$356H;** When bit 0 (CY flag) of PSW is 1, the CY flag is cleared to 0 and branched to address 0356H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 02D4H to 03D3H).

**DBNZ**

**Decrement and Branch if Not Zero**  
**Conditional Loop (R1 ≠ 0)**

**[Instruction format]**    **DBNZ dst, \$addr16**

**[Operation]**            **dst ← dst-1,**  
                              **then PC ← PC+b+jdisp16 if dst R1 ≠ 0**

**[Operand]**

Mnemonic	Operand(dst,\$addr16)	b(Number of bytes)
<b>DBNZ</b>	B, \$addr16	2
	C, \$addr16	2
	saddr, \$addr16	3

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- One is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) contents specified with the 1st operand and the subtraction result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the subtraction result is not 0, data is branched to the address indicated with the 2nd operand (\$addr16). When the subtraction result is 0, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.
- The flag remains unchanged.

**[Description example]**

**DBNZ B, \$1215H;** The B register contents are decremented. If the result is not 0, data is branched to 1215H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 1194H to 1293H).

## 5.14 CPU Control Instructions

The following are CPU control instructions.

SEL RBn ... 162

NOP ... 163

EI ... 164

DI ... 165

HALT ... 166

STOP ... 167

**SEL RBn**

Select Register Bank  
Register Bank Selection

[Instruction format]    **SEL RBn**

[Operation]            **RBS0, RBS1 ← n; (n = 0-3)**

[Operand]

Mnemonic	Operand(RBn)
<b>SEL</b>	RBn

[Flag]

Z	AC	CY

[Description]

- The register bank specified with the operand (RBn) is made a register bank for use with the next instruction onward.
- RBn ranges from RB0 to RB3.

[Description example]

**SEL RB2;** Register bank 2 is selected as one for used with the next instruction onward.

**NOP**

No Operation

No Operation

**[Instruction format]**    **NOP****[Operation]**            **no operation****[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- Only the time is consumed without processing.

**EI****Enable Interrupt  
Interrupt Enabled****[Instruction format]** EI**[Operation]** IE ← 1**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- The maskable interrupt acknowledgeable status is set (by setting the interrupt enable flag (IE) to (1)).
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next one instruction.
- If this instruction is executed, vectored interrupt acknowledgment with another source can be disabled. For details, refer to “**Interrupt Functions**” in **each product User’s Manual**.



**DI****Disable Interrupt  
Interrupt Disabled****[Instruction format]**     **DI****[Operation]**             **IE ← 0****[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- Maskable interrupt acknowledgment with vectored interrupt is disabled (with the interrupt enable flag (IE) cleared to (0)).
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next one instruction.
- For details of interrupt service, refer to “**Interrupt Functions**” in **each product User’s Manual**.

**HALT****Halt**  
**HALT Mode Set****[Instruction format]**     **HALT****[Operation]**             **Set HALT Mode****[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This instruction is used to set the HALT mode to stop the CPU operation clock. Total power consumption of the system can be decreased with intermittent operations through a combination with the normal operation mode.

**STOP****Stop  
Stop Mode Set****[Instruction format] STOP****[Operation] Set STOP Mode****[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

**[Description]**

- This instruction is used to set the STOP mode to stop the main system clock oscillator and to stop the whole system. Power dissipation can be minimized to an ultra-low level with only leakage current.

[MEMO]

## APPENDIX A REVISION HISTORY

The following table shows the revision history of the previous editions. The Applied to: column describes the chapters of each edition.

Edition	Major Revision from the Previous Edition	Applied to:
2nd	Added the following versions: $\mu$ PD78055 and 78P058, and $\mu$ PD78018F, 78044A, 78054Y, 78078, 78083, 78098, and 780208 Subseries	Throughout
	Added the English documentation No. to the related documents	Introduction
	Added the IEBus register area (the $\mu$ PD78098 Subseries only)	<b>CHAPTER 1 MEMORY SPACE</b>
	Added the description of the number of clocks when the external ROM contains the program to the clock column.	<b>CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET</b>
	Added Notes to the description of the ROR4 and ROL4 instructions in the rotate instruction.	<b>CHAPTER 5 EXPLANATION OF INSTRUCTIONS</b>
	Change the operation of the ADJBA and ADJBS instructions in the BCD Adjust instruction.	
3rd	Added the following versions: $\mu$ PD78014H, 78018FY, 78044F, 78044H, 78058F, 78058FY, 78064Y, 78064B, 78075B, 78075BY, 78078Y, 78098B, 780018Y, 780024, 780024Y, 780034, 780034Y, 780058, 780058Y, 780228, 780308, 780308Y, 780924, and 780964 Subseries, and $\mu$ PD78011F, 78012F, 78070A, 78070AY, 780001, 78P0914, 780206, and 780208	Throughout
	Deleted the following versions $\mu$ PD78024, 78044, and 78044A Subseries	
	Added Table of all internal RAM spaces of each model	<b>CHAPTER 1 MEMORY SPACE</b>
	Change the format of external memory space table	

[MEMO]

## APPENDIX B INSTRUCTION INDEX (MNEMONIC: BY FUNCTION)

### [8-bit data transfer instructions]

MOV ... 94  
XCH ... 95

### [16-bit data transfer instructions]

MOVW ... 97  
XCHW ... 98

### [8-bit operation instructions]

ADD ... 100  
ADDC ... 101  
SUB ... 102  
SUBC ... 103  
AND ... 104  
OR ... 105  
XOR ... 106  
CMP ... 107

### [16-bit operation instructions]

ADDW ... 109  
SUBW ... 110  
CMPW ... 111

### [Multiply/divide instructions]

MULU ... 113  
DIVUW ... 114

### [Increment/decrement instructions]

INC ... 116  
DEC ... 117  
INCW ... 118  
DECW ... 119

### [Rotate instructions]

ROR ... 121  
ROL ... 122  
RORC ... 123  
ROLC ... 124  
ROR4 ... 125  
ROL4 ... 126

### [BCD adjust instructions]

ADJBA ... 128  
ADJBS ... 129

### [Bit manipulation instructions]

MOV1 ... 131  
AND1 ... 132  
OR1 ... 133  
XOR1 ... 134  
SET1 ... 135  
CLR1 ... 136  
NOT1 ... 137

### [Call return instructions]

CALL ... 139  
CALLF ... 140  
CALLT ... 141  
BRK ... 142  
RET ... 143  
RETI ... 144  
RETB ... 145

### [Stack manipulation instructions]

PUSH ... 147  
POP ... 148  
MOVW SP, src ... 149  
MOVW AX, SP ... 149

**[Unconditional branch instruction]**

BR ... 151

**[Conditional branch instructions]**

BC ... 153

BNC ... 154

BZ ... 155

BNZ ... 156

BT ... 157

BF ... 158

BTCLR ...159

DBNZ ... 160

**[CPU control instructions]**

SEL RBn ... 162

NOP ... 163

EI ... 164

DI ... 165

HALT ... 166

STOP ... 167



## APPENDIX C INSTRUCTION INDEX (MNEMONIC: IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER)

### [A]

ADD ... 100  
ADDC ... 101  
ADDW ... 109  
ADJBA ... 128  
ADJBS ... 129  
AND ... 104  
AND1 ... 132

### [B]

BC ... 153  
BF ... 158  
BNC ... 154  
BNZ ... 156  
BR ... 151  
BRK ... 142  
BT ... 157  
BTCLR ... 159  
BZ ... 155

### [C]

CALL ... 139  
CALLF ... 140  
CALLT ... 141  
CLR1 ... 136  
CMP ... 107  
CMPW ... 111

### [D]

DBNZ ... 160  
DEC ... 117  
DECW ... 119  
DI ... 165  
DIVUW ... 114

### [E]

EI ... 164

### [H]

HALT ... 166

### [I]

INC ... 116  
INCW ... 118

### [M]

MOV ... 94  
MOVW ... 97  
MOVW AX, SP ... 149  
MOVW SP, src ... 149  
MOV1 ... 131  
MULU ... 113

### [N]

NOP ... 163  
NOT1 ... 137

### [O]

OR ... 105  
OR1 ... 133

### [P]

POP ... 148  
PUSH ... 147

### [R]

RET ... 143  
RETB ... 145  
RETI ... 144  
ROL ... 122  
ROLC ... 124  
ROL4 ... 126  
ROR ... 121  
RORC ... 123  
ROR4 ... 125

**[S]**

SEL RBn ... 162  
SET1 ... 135  
STOP ... 167  
SUB ... 102  
SUBC ... 103  
SUBW ... 110

**[X]**

XCH ... 95  
XCHW ... 98  
XOR ... 106  
XOR1 ... 134

## Facsimile Message

Although NEC has taken all possible steps to ensure that the documentation supplied to our customers is complete, bug free and up-to-date, we readily accept that errors may occur. Despite all the care and precautions we've taken, you may encounter problems in the documentation. Please complete this form whenever you'd like to report errors or suggest improvements to us.

From:

Name

Company

Tel.

FAX

Address

**Thank you for your kind support.**

### North America

NEC Electronics Inc.  
Corporate Communications Dept.  
Fax: 1-800-729-9288  
1-408-588-6130

### Hong Kong, Philippines, Oceania

NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.  
Fax: +852-2886-9022/9044

### Asian Nations except Philippines

NEC Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.  
Fax: +65-250-3583

### Europe

NEC Electronics (Europe) GmbH  
Technical Documentation Dept.  
Fax: +49-211-6503-274

### Korea

NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.  
Seoul Branch  
Fax: 02-528-4411

### Japan

NEC Semiconductor Technical Hotline  
Fax: 044-435-9608

### South America

NEC do Brasil S.A.  
Fax: +55-11-6462-6829

### Taiwan

NEC Electronics Taiwan Ltd.  
Fax: 02-2719-5951

I would like to report the following error/make the following suggestion:

Document title: \_\_\_\_\_

Document number: \_\_\_\_\_ Page number: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

If possible, please fax the referenced page or drawing.

Document Rating	Excellent	Good	Acceptable	Poor
Clarity	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Technical Accuracy	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Organization	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>